



CENGAGE
Learning™

COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Copyright in this work is owned by Cengage Learning Australia (“the work”). A condition of purchase of this electronic version of the work is that you agree to respect the copyright in the work, abide by the *Copyright Act 1968* and specifically agree not to transfer, sell, assign, misuse, copy or transmit an electronic or other version of the work to any third party.

Please note: This product is accompanied by a licence (single user, network or adoption) governing the terms and conditions of its use.

This is a legal agreement between the you, (the “Customer”) and Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited (ABN 14 058 280 149) (the “Licensor”) which provides the terms and conditions of this non-exclusive licence and the limited warranty for the Product. Use of the Product indicates an acknowledgement that the Customer has read and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. If you do not agree to these terms and conditions, return the Product to the place of purchase within 15 days of the date of purchase (with proof of purchase) for a full refund

1. Licence Grant

You do not receive title to the Product. Copyright in the Product (which includes all images, photographs, video, animations, audio, music and text incorporated in the Product, including all of the accompanying printed material) is owned by the Licensor and/or its suppliers and is protected by Australian copyright laws. The Licensor grants you a non-exclusive licence to use the Product subject to the restrictions and terms set out in this Agreement.

2. A Licence allows you to:

Use the Product on your computer. The Customer represents that they shall in no way place the Product in the public domain or in any way compromise our copyright in the Material. You agree to take reasonable steps to protect our copyright.

3. You may not:

Alter, modify, translate, reverse engineer, decompile, or adapt the software or create derivative works based on the Product.

Make further copies by any means technological, electronic, digital whatsoever without the written permission of the Licensor.

Rent or transfer all or any part of your rights under this Agreement. Remove or alter any copyright or other proprietary notice or label attached to the software.

4. Termination

Any failure to comply with the terms and conditions of this agreement will result in the automatic termination of this licence. Upon termination of this licence for any reason, the Customer must destroy or return to the Licensor all copies of the software and accompanying documentation.

5. Warranties

To the extent permitted by law, the Licensor’s liability for any breach of the warranty or any term implied by law into this licence is limited to the lowest cost of replacing the goods, acquiring equivalent goods or having the goods repaired.



esplora!

Margherita Ghezzi

*Prof. Joseph Co Bianco
Consultant*

1



Level 7, 80 Dorcas Street
South Melbourne, Victoria Australia 3205

Email nelson@thomsonlearning.com.au
Website <http://www.thomsonlearning.com.au>

First published in 2007
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
12 11 10 09 08 07

Copyright © 2007 Nelson Australia Pty Limited.

COPYRIGHT

Apart from fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review, or as permitted under Part VB of the Copyright Act, no part of this book may be reproduced by any process without permission. Copyright owners may take legal action against a person who infringes on their copyright through unauthorised copying. Enquiries should be directed to the publisher.

National Library of Australia
Cataloguing-in-Publication data

ISBN-13 978 0 17 013551 1.

Ghezzi, Margherita.
Esplora! Level 1, Student book.

1st ed.
ISBN 9780170135511 (pbk.)

I. Italian language - Textbooks for foreign speakers - English. I.Title.

458.2421

Editors Adrienne Costanzo, Nadia Pin and Lyn Smith
Language consultant Prof Joseph LoBianco
Managing editor Victoria Taylor
Publishing editor Olive McRae
Senior designer Sue Dani
Text designer Sue Dani and Vonda Pestana
Text illustrator Anton Emdin, Anton Graphics
Cover designer Sue Dani
Cover illustrator Sue Dani
Photography Vonda Pestana
Photo researcher Corrina Tauschke
Typeset in Avenir by Sue Dani and Vonda Pestana
Production controller Hanako Smith
Printed in China by C&C Offset Ltd

This title is published under the imprint of Nelson School.

Nelson Australia Pty Limited ACN 058 280 149 (incorporated in Victoria)
trading as Thomson Learning Australia.

Any URLs contained in this publication were checked for currency during the production process. Note, however, that the publisher cannot vouch for the ongoing currency of URLs.

introduction

Benvenuti!

Welcome to *esplora!* We hope you'll enjoy the ride exploring Italy with Chiara, her cousin Laura, and their friends Marco and Max. See when they'll catch up with the mysterious Federico... is he avoiding Chiara?

Your decision to study Italian is a good one! Italy is a fantastic place as you'll see, and is home to many famous people from the world of sport, fashion, art, music and history. And of course, it's the language of food... pizza, pasta, cheese and desserts. Who can live without gelati?!

Another cool thing about studying Italian is you'll find many words and expressions sound very similar to English. Look at these Italian words and you'll see what we mean... **studente**, **matematica**, **musica**, **arte**, **scuola**. What's more, once you know some Italian, it's really easy to study other languages like French or Spanish. For example, in Italian, 'friend' is **amico**, in French it's **ami**, and in Spanish, **amigo**. So this just shows you how easy it will be to become... multilingual!

Here are some 'navigation tips' on how to take a trip on the *esplora!* Vespa.

In every *capitolo* you'll find:

- ♦ **puntata** – an episode of the cartoon story showing our characters on their search to find Federico. Each **puntata** is recorded on the audio CD and has an electronic presentation **Puntata Live** to help you understand and learn the language from the **puntata**. In each episode you can find the secret password for a website activity, and each **puntata** also has a wordlist in Italian and English to help you understand what's going on in the cartoon.
- ♦ **pratica and attività** – activities to practise the language you've learned
- ♦ **immagina che** – more activities that extend on the language you know and include DVD scenes with the characters
- ♦ **esplor@mag la rivista** – heaps of pix and info about Italy
- ♦ **grammatica** – short and easy-to-understand explanations of grammar and language points
- ♦ **vocabolario** – a summary of all the vocabulary/expressions you'll need to be able to do the things in the 'outcomes' of the *capitolo* ['outcomes' are what you'll be able to do in Italian, like count to ten, or say hi to someone]. The language in the **vocabolario** is also what is used in the Workbook exercises and ... tests!

fun features

- ♦ your own *esplora!* DVD in your Workbook to play whenever you want
- ♦ an *esplora!* mobile phone game
- ♦ podcasts of the **vocabolario** for each chapter so you can download the lists onto an MP3 player or Ipod. You could to listen to them on your way to school before a test!
- ♦ check out the *esplora!* website at www.esplora.com.au and see the author, Margherita... she has her own video clip! There are also interactive activities you can do!

Allora... esplora l'Italia!

contents

CHAPTER	CONTEXT / OUTCOMES	PAGE	CONTENT	ICT
Capitolo 1	<p>Chiara and her cousin Laura arrive in Rome after a long flight from Melbourne. Laura is very happy to be in Italy for the first time. Chiara is looking forward to seeing Federico again. She met him a year ago in Australia and she has a crush on him. Will he be there to welcome her like they planned?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ introducing yourself ◆ greeting people ◆ exchanging personal information ◆ using formal and informal expressions ◆ numbers 0–20 ◆ Roman alphabet ◆ SMS 	2 puntata 1	Dov'è Federico?	audio website
		4 pratica	Nuovi amici L'appello in classe	audio website
		6 immagina che	scenario: sending SMS messages L'alfabeto I numeri 0–20	audio/video audio
		8 esplor@mag la rivista	L'Italia Una missione spaziale Aeroporto di Roma L'italiano Le origini dell'italiano	website
		10 grammatica	my name is... pleased to meet you how are you? personal pronouns [singular] verb: essere [singular] grammatical gender: masculine, feminine informal and formal vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 2	<p>For Chiara it's a wild ride around Rome on the back of Marco's Vespa! When they finally arrive at Marco's place, Chiara has only three things on her mind: hair, makeup and... Federico! Where is he? How far will she go to find out?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ talking about your own and other people's age ◆ saying where you and others live ◆ talking about nationalities ◆ gladiators and the Colosseum 	12 puntata 2	Marco è molto italiano	audio website
		14 pratica	Alla festa E tu, dove abiti?	audio
		16 immagina che	scenario: talking about nationalities Le nazionalità	audio/video
		18 esplor@mag la rivista	Dove abiti tu? Colosseo e gladiatori Pane e circo Gladiatori antichi e moderni	website
		18 grammatica	verb: avere [singular] how old are you? the negative verb: abitare [singular] I live in... conjunctions: 'and' and 'but' nationalities and adjectives vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 3	<p>Laura has gone to Florence, but Chiara has decided to stay in Rome. She's determined to find Federico. Marco's not very happy to babysit Chiara any more. Shouldn't Federico be looking after her? Marco has arranged to see Federico at their favourite café. But will he turn up?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ saying where you and others come from ◆ describing yourself and others ◆ introducing people ◆ exchanging opinions about people ◆ school in Italy ◆ popular places to get together 	22 puntata 3	Pomeriggio con amici	audio website
		24 pratica	Gli amici internazionali Com'è?	audio
		26 immagina che	scenario: describing others	audio/video
		28 esplor@mag la rivista	Il circolino e simili L'oratorio La piazza Il corso La scuola dell'obbligo	website
		30 grammatica	where are you from? adjectives to describe people introducing other people exchanging simple opinions vocabolario	website podcast

CHAPTER	CONTEXT / OUTCOMES	PAGE	CONTENT	ICT
Capitolo 4	<p>What is Federico doing in the catacombs? Is this spooky maze of underground tombs the best place to look for him? Chiara and Marco have joined forces to find Fede, with 'Macho' Max tagging along to help. Let's see if they are any closer to discovering where Federico is ...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> identifying masculine and feminine nouns using indefinite articles to indicate objects indicating things you use in class expressing simple likes and dislikes the catacombs in Rome Italian pasta 	32 puntata 4	Un posto misterioso	audio website
		34 pratica	Molti articoli usati	audio
		36 immagina che	scenario: using indefinite articles and adjectives	audio/video
		38 esplor@mag la rivista	Sito italiano Il labirinto di Roma: le catacombe Pasta per tutti	website
		40 grammatica	masculine and feminine nouns the indefinite article I like it vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 5	<p>From the catacombs in Rome ... to a volcano in Pompeii! Marco's peaceful life has changed drastically since Federico disappeared and left him to look after Chiara. Marco's only way out is to find Federico. Will he get away with wagging school while he's being dragged around Italy?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> using some definite articles describing houses and places asking and telling the date numbers 20–100 simple requests with <i>vorrei</i> [I would like] Pompeii ancient Roman architecture 	42 puntata 5	La visita archeologica	audio website
		44 pratica	La casa di Livinia a Pompei Che giorno è oggi?	audio
		46 immagina che	scenario: making simple requests with <i>vorrei</i>	audio/video audio
		48 esplor@mag la rivista	La tragedia di Pompei L'architettura romana La casa Il tempio Il bagno pubblico CAP: il Codice di Avviamento Postale	website
		50 grammatica	the definite article talking about the date going shopping vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 6	<p>Federico is following his dream of becoming a famous singer ... and nothing will get in his way! Next, he goes to Florence, where there's an international rock concert being held in the city square, Piazza della Signoria. His biggest fans, Chiara, Marco and Max, have arrived. Will Chiara finally meet up with Federico? Or will he get away again?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> using the verb <i>essere</i> [to be] in the plural using nouns plural using <i>c'è, ci sono</i> [there is, there are] indicating people and things [in places and pictures] ordering food and drinks Michelangelo's <i>David</i> two famous music festivals 	52 puntata 6	Il concerto rock	audio website
		54 pratica	Le fotografie di Firenze Dove siete voi qui?	audio
		56 immagina che	scenario: ordering food and drink	audio/video
		58 esplor@mag la rivista	Tutti amano David David e David La musica in Italia	website
		60 grammatica	verb: <i>essere</i> there is/there are making nouns plural talking about plural things vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 7	<p>Chiara and Marco have met up with Laura, who is studying art in Florence. They've managed to find the music shop that was on the card Federico gave Max at the concert. Why did Federico want them to go to the music shop? Let's find out...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> using the verb <i>avere</i> [to have] in the plural expressing ages in the plural using expressions with <i>avere</i> describing things in the plural expressing simple needs the Uffizi Gallery other art forms in Italy 	62 puntata 7	Musica o museo?	audio website
		64 pratica	I profili video	audio
		66 immagina che	scenario: using expressions with <i>avere</i>	audio/video
		68 esplor@mag la rivista	La Galleria degli Uffizi La Primavera [Botticelli] Un altro tipo d'arte	website
		70 grammatica	plural adjectives verb: <i>avere</i> personal information in the plural expressions using <i>avere</i> vocabolario	website podcast



CHAPTER	CONTEXT / OUTCOMES	PAGE	CONTENT	ICT
Capitolo 8	<p>The next stop is Venice, the romantic city in the northeast of Italy. Marco and Chiara have found out about a masquerade party in Venice [where everyone will be wearing masks!]. The Explora band will also be at the party. Will they finally find Federico? Time is running out...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ using the plural definite articles <i>i, gli, le</i> ♦ saying the days of the week ♦ telling the time ♦ writing simple invitations ♦ Carnevale in Venice ♦ international time zones 	72 puntata 8	La festa in maschera	audio website
		74 pratica	Tanti inviti Che ore sono?	audio audio
		76 immagina che	scenario: telling the time Che ore sono?	audio/video
		78 esplor@mag la rivista	Il fuso orario Il Carnevale di Venezia	website
		80 grammatica	plural of 'the' what's the time? a.m./p.m. 24-hour clock at what time? vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 9	<p>The masquerade party didn't end up as Chiara had hoped. Federico has taken off again, and all she's left with is his mobile phone! The next day Laura suggests they take a ferry to the island of Torcello, and stop off at Murano and Burano for some shopping – that should cheer Chiara up! But the question is... where will Federico turn up next?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ expressing likes and dislikes ♦ saying how much you like something ♦ asking for prices ♦ negotiating and bargaining when shopping ♦ Murano glass 	82 puntata 9	La gita in vaporetto	audio website
		84 pratica	In vetreria	audio
		86 immagina che	scenario: negotiating a price	audio/video
		88 esplor@mag la rivista	Commedia dell'Arte Il riciclaggio I simboli di Venezia Arte in vetro L'Italia in Europa	website
		90 grammatica	I like... you like... adverbs of quantity how much is it? vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 10	<p>Chiara and Marco are taking the train to their next destination. When you're on a train you can often meet new and exciting people!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ saying what you and others do ♦ saying what someone else likes or dislikes ♦ exchanging information about family and friends ♦ exchanging personal information ♦ public transport in Italy 	92 puntata 10	Viaggio in treno	audio website
		94 pratica	Intervista alla radio Un'intervista a uno studente	audio audio
		96 immagina che	scenario: describing family	audio/video
		98 esplor@mag la rivista	Sì, viaggiare! Trasporto pubblico Che traffico!	website
		100 grammatica	infinitive verbs -are and -ere verbs in the singular interrogatives... asking questions like and don't like vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 11	<p>Fede is in the glamorous city of Milan to audition for a new music TV show. Will Marco and Chiara be able to find Fede in this crowded city? Laura and Max could help, but they have other plans. Don't get too hooked on the glitz of Milan because it might soon be time to move on...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ talking about what people usually do ♦ talking about what people are doing in the near future ♦ writing emails ♦ using the verb <i>andare</i> [to go] ♦ inviting people to events ♦ accepting or declining invitations ♦ Milan 	102 puntata 11	L'avventura a Milano	audio website
		104 pratica	Un'e-mail per la nuova amica Le indicazioni in una lettera	audio
		106 immagina che	scenario: using the verb <i>andare</i>	audio/video
		108 esplor@mag la rivista	La città di Milano L'ultima Cena di Leonardo da Vinci	website
		110 grammatica	plural conjugations of -are and -ere verbs verb: <i>andare</i> simple prepositions vocabolario	website podcast

CHAPTER	CONTEXT / OUTCOMES	PAGE	CONTENT	ICT
Capitolo 12	<p>Chasing the TV crew was a bit embarrassing, but it was worth it! Chiara and Marco have followed Fede to the beautiful Lake Como. But Chiara's not looking at the view! She wants to find Fede this time. Bad weather and security guards are not going to stop her!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ using the irregular verb <i>fare</i> [to do/to make] ◆ using expressions with the verb <i>fare</i> ◆ leaving messages on voicemail ◆ talking about the weather ◆ Lake Como 	112 puntata 12	Così lontano, così vicino	audio website
		114 pratica	Messaggi in segreteria Espressioni con 'fare'	audio
		116 immagina che	scenario: talking about the weather	audio/video
		118 esplor@mag la rivista	Che tempo fa in Italia? Lago di Como I promessi sposi [Alessandro Manzoni]	website
		120 grammatica	verb: fare vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 13	<p>DAMS is a faculty at the University of Bologna. It is the oldest university in the world [it started in 1088]! In the DAMS faculty, students enrol to become experts in... hang on! That's too easy. Let's follow Marco and Chiara, with her arty cousin Laura, to discover what DAMS is. Will Laura drive them crazy trying to drag them along to museums and monuments? Maybe not this time...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ using the irregular verbs <i>stare</i> [to stay], <i>dare</i> [to give], <i>bere</i> [to drink] ◆ using expressions with <i>stare</i> and <i>dare</i> ◆ describing your feelings ◆ talking about your health with the doctor ◆ Bologna 	122 puntata 13	Un ragazzo carino per Laura	audio website
		124 pratica	Un messaggio blog per Valentina Espressioni con 'dare'	audio
		126 immagina che	scenario: talking about your health Avere mal di...	audio/video
		128 esplor@mag la rivista	Andiamo a Bologna La tessera sanitaria Bologna: La 'Grassa' Specialità bolognesi	website
		130 grammatica	irregular verbs: dare, stare, bere avere mal di... parts of the body vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 14	<p>Can you hear the racing Ferrari? Marco and Chiara have followed Federico to the home of Ferrari – the Ferrari factory in Maranello. Marco knew Federico loves racing cars, but did he know that Chiara loves Ferraris too? And what comes first for her?... finding Fede or a Ferrari?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ using regular <i>-ire</i> verbs ◆ using the irregular verb <i>dire</i> [to say] ◆ expressing amazement, excitement, disappointment ◆ Ferrari and Formula One motor racing ◆ other sports in Italy 	132 puntata 14	Una passione tutta rossa	audio website
		134 pratica	Un aspirante pilota di Formula Uno Che cosa dici?	audio
		136 immagina che	scenario: using expressions with che	audio/video
		138 esplor@mag la rivista	Formula Uno in Italia, Gran Premio Lo sport in Italia Lo sport a scuola Gli animali 'sportivi'	website
		140 grammatica	<i>-ire</i> verbs verb: dire exclamations using che vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 15	<p>Zooming down the coast in Cristian's red Ferrari is really fun for Chiara and Marco. But will the mood last? Marco is beginning to think about what his father will say when they get home. After all their adventures together, are they ready for a reality check?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ using some <i>-ire</i> verbs like <i>capire</i> ◆ expressing preferences ◆ making suggestions ◆ holidays in Italy 	142 puntata 15	Ultima fermata	audio website
		144 pratica	Che cosa preferisci?	audio
		146 immagina che	scenario: making suggestions	audio/video
		148 esplor@mag la rivista	Le vacanze italiane in estate Le vacanze a Ostia Lido La maratona Roma–Ostia Le feste pubbliche 15 agosto, giorno speciale	website
		150 grammatica	<i>-ire</i> verbs [second pattern] to say what you prefer to make suggestions vocabolario	website podcast
Capitolo 16	<p>Is Chiara finally going to see Federico? The kids are now back in Rome after their travels around Italy. Chiara's arranged to meet Fede at the Spanish Steps, in the heart of Rome. Marco can't be bothered going. He's tired, but he says he'll meet up with Chiara and Fede later for a gelato... do you think he will?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ using the verb <i>venire</i> [to come] ◆ using superlatives ◆ famous Roman <i>piazze</i> 	152 puntata 16	Dov'è Marco?	audio website
		154 pratica	Vieni o no?	audio
		156 immagina che	scenario: using the verb <i>venire</i>	audio/video
		158 esplor@mag la rivista	Le piazze di Roma, Piazza di Spagna, Piazza San Pietro, Le piazze in Italia, Le sagre regionali	website
		160 grammatica	verb: venire Superlative adjectives: using <i>-issimo</i> and <i>molto</i> vocabolario	website podcast



Ciao Belli!



Let's take a seat on the *esplora!* red Vespa. It's time to hit the road! Chiara has come all the way from Australia to Rome to meet up with her friend Federico. But don't tell her... 'Fede' has asked his friend, Marco, to look after her! For how long, who knows? Let's find out.

This is what the *esplora!* cartoon story is about, in 16 fun-filled episodes that will leave you wondering what's going to happen next. And in every episode you'll need to find where Federico is... You'll have to decode:

- clues in the cartoon drawings to find the hidden password and enter secret spots on the *esplora!* website www.esplora.com.au
- clues to find out where Federico will go next. The clues could be in an SMS, MMS, email or something else!... See if you can be the first to find them!

To help you stay on the right track you'll have:

- pod-casting
- a cool mobile phone game... to practise some easy Italian on your own mobile
- 16 DVD clips... you can meet the real-life characters from *esplora!*

Andiamo. Let's go! Jump on the driver's seat! Put on your helmet and let's hit the *esplora!* trail!

Enjoy and... *ci vediamo presto!*

PASSAPORTO

Nome: CHIARA
Cognome: BIANCO
Età: 15 anni
Compleanno: 29 maggio
Residente: a Melbourne, in Australia
Nazionalità: australiana e italiana [il papà è italiano]
Segni particolari: il telefonino rosa
Le piace: viaggiare, fare shopping, incontrare gli amici, la musica rock e... Federico
Contatti: cugina di Laura, amica di Fede



PASSAPORTO

Nome: FEDERICO [per gli amici FEDE]
Cognome: MAI
Età: 15 anni
Compleanno: 8 agosto
Residente: a Roma, in Italia
Nazionalità: italiano
Segni particolari: un piercing all'orecchio
Gli piace: il suo piercing, cantare, fare musica rock, suonare la chitarra, partecipare a concorsi di musica, viaggiare, la sua band [gli Explora!]
Contatti: grande amico di Marco e Max, amico di Chiara



Dov'è Federico?



In this chapter you will learn:

- to introduce yourself
- to greet people and exchange personal information
- to use informal and formal expressions
- to count from 0 to 20
- about the Roman alphabet and the origin of the Italian language
- to use simple SMS

Chiara and her cousin Laura arrive in Rome after a long flight from Melbourne. Laura is very happy to be in Italy for the first time. Chiara is looking forward to seeing Federico again. She met him a year ago in Australia, and she has a crush on him. Will he be there to welcome her like they planned?



ountata uno

5 Più tardi...

Fede è via, mi dispiace. Questo è mio papà.

Piacere, Chiara, piacere Laura. Buongiorno! Come va?

Piacere signor Cosentin. Bene, grazie.

6

What is Rome airport commonly known as? www.esplora.com.au

Piacere, signore! Va benissimo, grazie. E Lei, come sta?

Non c'è male, grazie Laura.

7 Nel parcheggio...

Sorpresa! Laura e papà in auto... io e Chiara in...Vespa! OK?

OK?!? Magari! No non va bene... io sto male! E dov'è Federico?

BEEP BEEP BEEP

ecco... here's...
 che... what/how...
 profumo perfume, aroma
 ma but
 fammi un favore! give me a break!
 sto male I feel bad
 malissimo very bad
 dov'è...? where is...?
 lo I, me
 sono I am
 stanca [f] tired
 tu you
 come stai? how are you?
 bene well
 anzi actually
 benissimo very well
 non not
 sei you are
 noiosa [f] boring
 benvenuta [f] welcome
 l'amico [m] friend
 di of
 mi chiamo my name is
 come ti chiami? what's your name?
 salve hello
 piacere pleased to meet you
 e and
 questo [m] this
 chi who
 è [he] is
 più tardi later
 via away
 mi dispiace I'm sorry
 papà dad
 buongiorno good morning
 come va? how's it going?
 signor Mr
 grazie thank you
 signore sir
 Lei, come sta? [fml] How are you?
 non c'è male not bad
 nel parcheggio in the car park
 in auto by car
 magari! as if!
 va bene OK
 ci vediamo see you
 presto soon
 bellissima [f] beautiful
 TVB [ti voglio bene] I love you
 [with friends and family]

Continua...

Vero o falso?

- 1 L'amico di Federico si chiama Marco.
- 2 Il papà di Marco si chiama Paolo.
- 3 Chiara sta bene.
- 4 Laura sta molto bene.

Riflettiamo

- 1 Do you shake hands when you first meet someone? Do you say something like **piacere**?
- 2 Italian friends and family usually hug, and kiss once on each cheek when they meet. What do you do when you greet people?



pratica

Nuovi amici

Ascolta

Listen to these people introduce each other or other people.

1 MARGHERITA: Ciao.

DANIELA: Salve.

MARGHERITA: Come ti chiami?

DANIELA: Io mi chiamo Daniela. E tu, come ti chiami?

MARGHERITA: Mi chiamo Margherita. Piacere, Daniela.

DANIELA: Piacere.

MARGHERITA: E lui, come si chiama?

DANIELA: Lui si chiama Elvis.

MARGHERITA: Piacere, Elvis. Tu sei **carino!**

2 LINA: **Buonasera**, Professore. Io mi chiamo Lina. Lei, come si chiama?

MAURIZIO: Mi chiamo Maurizio Rossi.

LINA: Piacere, signor Rossi.

MAURIZIO: Piacere, Lina.

3 ROBERTO: **Buon pomeriggio**, Silvio. Ehi, come si chiama questo ragazzo?

SILVIO: Lui? Si chiama Massimiliano Tommasi.

ROBERTO: OK. E come si chiama questa **ragazza**?

SILVIO: Si chiama Nicoletta. È carina, vero? Beh, a domani, Roberto.

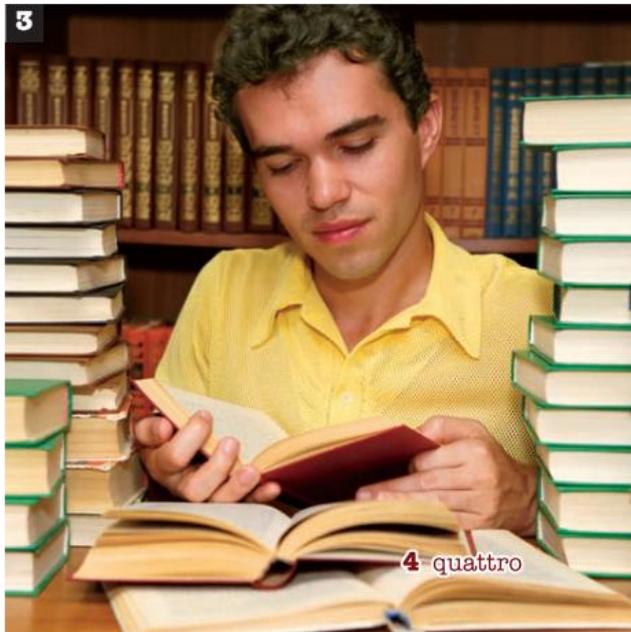
ROBERTO: **Arrivederci.**



1



2



3



Riflettiamo

Look at the dialogues on this page. What is the difference between greeting people your own age and greeting older people (or someone you don't know) in Italian? Do you do the same in English?

Attività

Trova, scrivi, ascolta

Find all the greetings and expressions from *Capitolo uno*. Write them in your exercise book and listen to them at www.esplora.com.au. This will improve your pronunciation and help you to remember them.

Immagina

Imagine being at Marco's and meeting these people for the first time.

- Chiara
- Signor Cosentin

In pairs, write and then perform what you would say. Record your performances.

In Italy, teachers can be addressed as *signor* or *signora* followed by their surname. But usually they are called *professore* [for male teachers] or *professoressa* [for female teachers]. This is often shortened to *prof.*

L'appello in classe

Ascolta

Listen to the teacher, *Signora Carusi*, taking the roll and asking her students how they are.

Come stai?



1

bene



2

molto bene



3

così così



4

va bene



5

male



6

molto male

Attività

Immagina

Imagine meeting people and asking how they feel... in different situations! Move around the classroom and, when your teacher claps, stop and act out a scenario with the person closest to you. Your teacher will suggest one of these scenarios:

- old friends who haven't seen each other for a long time
- a young person meeting an older person
- two students meeting for the first time at the beginning of the school year

lui he, him
 come si chiama? what's his name?
 carino [m] cute
 buonasera good evening
 buon pomeriggio good afternoon
 ragazzo boy
 ragazza girl
 carina [f] cute
 vero? don't you think?
 a domani see you tomorrow
 arrivederci goodbye



immagina che...

scenario

Marco is going to Pisa on a three-day school excursion. Marco, Max and Claudia are texting their plans of what to take, as well as updating phone numbers.

Ciao. Max e Claudia! Marco qui. Come va? x la gita, CD di musica italiana o DVD? NB: Fede è via. MSN stasera? Numero telefonino di Fede x favore?

Salve! Sto benissimo. Musica italiana va bene! io: 5 DVD e MP3. PC è morto, no MSN stasera. Fede: 03235567884. Grazie x SMS! 'notte, Claudia ☺

Buonasera, Max qui. Marco e Claudia: numero casa x favore? Mio numero casa: 06845692. Marco: musica italiana out. Claudia: no DVD italiani. Come si chiama l'australiana, amica di Fede? È carina? E la cugina?

Riflettiamo

In these text messages you probably recognise lots of the acronyms, for example CD, DVD... What other acronyms can you find? How do you say them in Italian?

postaprioritaria
Priority Mail

CARTOLINA

Most Italian secondary schools organise excursions to famous cities, usually in spring, 21st March - 21st June. It's exciting for the students to spend time away together.

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD



6 sei



Both English and Italian use the Roman alphabet for writing but, while English has 26 letters, Italian has only 21. The letters J, K, W, X and Y are not in the Italian alphabet, but they are used for foreign words.

L'alfabeto

Ascolta

Listen to the CD.

A a B b C c D d E e F f G g H h I i L l M m

N n O o P p Q q R r S s T t U u V v Z z

Attività

Presentati e di'

Introduce yourself and spell your name in Italian, letter by letter.

Di'

Take turns spelling the name of the person next to you, letter by letter.

I numeri

Ascolta

Listen to the CD.

zero	0		sette	7	vii	quattordici	14	xiv
uno	1	i	otto	8	viii	quindici	15	xv
due	2	ii	nove	9	ix	sedici	16	xvi
tre	3	iii	dieci	10	x	diciassette	17	xvii
quattro	4	iv	undici	11	xi	diciotto	18	xviii
cinque	5	v	dodici	12	xii	diciannove	19	xix
sei	6	vi	tredici	13	xiii	venti	20	xx

Attività

Di'

Say your phone number. Take turns, using *il mio numero di telefonino* è... Write the numbers down, then check that they are correct.

Immagina

Imagine you are Marco or Claudia, and reply to Max's SMS. Include greetings, comments about his SMS and answers to his questions.

The multiplication symbol *x* is pronounced *per* in Italian. So, *x* is also used to replace *per*, meaning *for*, when writing informal messages such as in SMS.

qui here
Come va? How's it going?
x [per] for
la gita excursion
o or
NB [Nota Bene] please note
stasera tonight
numero telefonino mobile
phone number
morto dead
'notte [buonanotte] good
night
numero casa home phone
number
amica [f] friend
la cugina [f] cousin



L'Italia

Official name: Repubblica Italiana

Climate: Temperate/Mediterranean

Area: 301,225 km²

Neighbouring countries: France, Switzerland, Austria, Slovenia

Population: 59 million

Capital city: Rome

Currency: The euro [€]

Attività

Lavora in gruppo

Work in a group to find the same information about your country, and compare it to Italy.

↑ La bocca della verità
[The Mouth of Truth, in Rome]

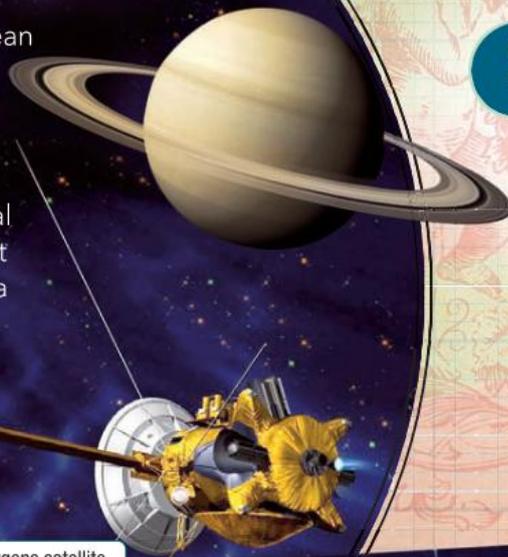
Riflettiamo

Why do you think Italian is spoken in several different countries?

→ Celebrating the Italian soccer team, the 2006 World Champions

Una missione... spaziale!

Italy's latest space launch was the **Cassini-Huygens** mission, a joint project with NASA, the European Space Agency and the Italian Space Agency. The Italians provided the high-gain antenna and elements of several scientific instruments. It was launched in Florida in 1997, after years of research, design and testing, which involved more than 8,000 technicians and engineers.



→ Cassini-Huygens satellite

Aeroporto di Roma

Rome's international airport is officially called **Leonardo da Vinci**, but it is commonly known as **Fiumicino**, the name of the area where it is located. It's approximately 40 minutes from Rome's city centre. You can use taxis and buses, but the most common means of transport is the train called **Leonardo Express**, which takes you directly from the airport to the main train station, **Stazione Termini**.

There's also a smaller domestic airport, known as **Ciampino**, which offers national flights or cheaper air travel to some of the smaller European airports.

Attività

Rispondi

- What's the name of the international airport in your city?
- Where is it located?
- How long does it take from the city centre to the airport?

esplor@

Mi chiamo Angelo.

NAME OF PASSENGER

FROM MELBOURNE MEL
TO ROME ROM

CARRIER / FLIGHT CLASS / DATE TIME
282 M 16AUG 1040

GATE GATE CLOSES SEAT SMOKE
7 1030 23D XX

PCR CK WT UNCK WT SEQ NO
17 0 101

PASSENGER TICKET AND BAGGAGE CHECK
4A

5 April
13.00

Rome
RM 5265489

1/021Kg

L'italiano

L'italiano is the official language of Italy, the Vatican City and San Marino [an independent republic within Italy]. Italian is also spoken in many other countries and is one of the official languages of Switzerland. The **Accademia della Crusca** is the main point of reference for the study, research and promotion of Italian. The academy created the famous dictionary, *Il Vocabolario*, in 1612, reviewing and reworking it until the final version was completed over 300 years later in 1923.

Attività

Ricerca

Research countries where a significant number of people speak Italian. Present your findings on a poster with tables, maps and pictures. Visit www.accademiadellacrusca.it for assistance.

Le origini dell'italiano

Modern Italian language developed over a long period from the pre-Roman civilisation called the Etruscans. The main influence on the language was the Romans, whose language, Latin, became the main language of Europe for centuries. German and French also influenced the development of Italian. The most ancient text in Italian literature is *Il Cantico delle Creature* by Saint Francis of Assisi [1181–1226], Italy's patron saint.

← Basilica di San Francesco [Assisi, Umbria]

Gioca

List as many famous Italian products, brands, people, places and buildings as you can in two minutes. Whoever finds the most wins the title of *esperto d'italiano*. Make an *esplora!* badge for the winner.

➔ Max Biaggi [Motorcycling Grand Prix champion]

Let's see real Italian in action! Choose one of these web pages as the default page for your PC:

www.yahoo.it
www.google.it
www.virgilio.it

Progetto

Create your own version of the Leonardo Express, which travels from Fiumicino into the city of Rome. You can draw it or use graphic software if you have access to some. Include a simple presentation in Italian, with greetings and a new name, if you want to change it. Be creative and use as many Italian words as you can! Use the *Vocabolario* list to inspire your work of art. If you'd like to see real images, simply type the words 'Leonardo Express' in any internet search engine.

➔ For more images to go www.esplora.com.au



grammatica

my name is...

To say your name, you can use:

[Io] mi chiamo...

[Io] sono...

If you want to ask someone's name, you say:

Come ti chiami [tu]?

What's your name?

Come si chiama [lui/lei]?

What's his/her name?

When you are addressing an older person who is not family or a friend, you use the formal, **Lei**:

Come si chiama [Lei]?

What's your name?

To say somebody's name, you use:

[Tu] ti chiami...

Your name is...

[Lui/Lei] si chiama...

His/Her name is...

Il ragazzo si chiama...

The boy's name is...

La ragazza si chiama...

The girl's name is...

pleased to meet you

When meeting someone new, Italians usually shake hands, and say **piacere** *pleased to meet you*.

how are you?

To ask how someone is [family or friend], you can use one of these phrases:

Come stai?

How are you?

Come va?

How's it going?

To ask how someone is [older or that you do not know], you use the formal form:

Come sta [Lei]?

How are you?

To ask how someone else is, you use:

Come sta [lui/lei]?

How is he/she?

To answer, you can choose from the following expressions:

bene	well
molto bene/benissimo	very well
male	unwell
molto male/malissimo	very unwell
così così	so so
non c'è male	not bad
va bene	OK

You can also add polite expressions like:

grazie	thank you
mi dispiace	I am sorry

personal pronouns

io	I
tu	you
lui	he
lei	she
Lei	you [formal]

essere [to be]

[io] sono	I am
[tu] sei	you are
[lui/lei] è	he/she is
[Lei] è	you are [formal]

Note that you must use the feminine personal pronoun **Lei** [written with a capital letter] for both men and women when you are being formal.

abbreviations [m] and [f]

One of the major differences between Italian and English is that in Italian we have 'grammatical gender'. This means that not only people and animals, but also objects, are grammatically classified as either masculine [m] or feminine [f].

Can you see the difference between these sentences in Italian?

Questo è Marco.

This is Marco.

Questa è Chiara.

This is Chiara.

Questo è un libro.

This is a book.

Questa è una penna.

This is a pen.

informal and formal

In Italian there are different ways of saying *you*, depending on who you're talking to. When you're talking to someone your own age or someone you already know, you use **tu**. If it's an older person you don't know well, you use **Lei**. This is called informal [inf] and formal [fml] register.

informal

Tu, come ti chiami?
What is your name?

Ciao, mi chiamo Marco.
Hi, my name is Marco.

formal

Signore, Lei come si chiama?
Sir, what is your name?

Buongiorno, mi chiamo Maurizio Cosentin.
Good morning, my name is Maurizio Cosentin.

this is...

To introduce someone, you use:

Questo è... [m] **Questa è... [f]**
This is... This is...

To help you remember vocabulary and grammar, experiment with different ways of learning to find out which ones work best for you. You could try posters, colourful pictures and labels, writing, singing, recording and re-listening, reading or drawing. Can you think of any others? Share them with the class!

Vocabolario

a domani a più tardi a presto arrivederci benvenuta [f] benvenuto [m] buon pomeriggio buonanotte buonasera buongiorno ci vediamo ciao salve	see you tomorrow see you later see you soon goodbye welcome welcome good afternoon good night good evening good morning see you hi hello	come sta [Lei]? come sta? come stai? come va?	how are you? how is he/she feeling? how are you? how's it going?
[io] sono [tu] sei [lui/lei] è [Lei] è [fml] chi è [lui/lei]? come si chiama [Lei]? [fml] come si chiama? come ti chiami? ecco... mi chiamo piacere questa è... [f] questo è... [m] si chiama	I am you are he/she is you are who is he/she? what's your name? what's his/her name? what's your name? here's... my name is pleased to meet you this is this is his/her name is	bene benissimo così così grazie male malissimo mi dispiace molto bene molto male non c'è male va bene	well very well so so thank you bad very bad I'm sorry very well very bad not bad it's OK
dov'è...? qui via di e ma non	where is...? here away of and but not	bellissima [f] bellissimo [m] carina [f] carino [m] noiosa [f] noioso [m] stanca [f] stanco [m] vera [f] vero [m]	beautiful beautiful cute cute boring boring tired tired true true
fammi un favore! magari!	do me a favour! [give me a break!] as if!	amica [f] amico [m] casa gita numero papà ragazza ragazzo signor signore telefonino	friend friend home/house excursion number dad girl boy Mr [in front of name] sir mobile phone

Marco è molto italiano

In this chapter you will learn to talk about:

- your own and other people's age
- where you and others live
- nationalities
- gladiators and the Colosseum

puntata due...



1 *For Chiara it's a wild ride around Rome on the back of Marco's Vespa! When they finally arrive at Marco's place, Chiara has only three things on her mind: hair, makeup and... Federico! Where is he? How far will she go to find out?*

Ma dove diavolo abiti... molto lontano?

Ma che confusione!

No, abito qui vicino... solo cinque minuti...

2

Che fifona... ma dai! Dove abiti? In un deserto?

No! Abito a Melbourne, una grande città! Ma il traffico non è così pazzo...

3 Più tardi, a casa di Marco...

Mm, Marco abita in un appartamento carino... ma che piccolo!

Ma dai! Questo è un tipico appartamento italiano! Guarda: il Colosseo!

4

E anche Marco è molto italiano... è simpatico, vero?

Insomma...

5 Più tardi, di pomeriggio...

Allora Laura. Quanti anni hai?

Ho sedici anni.

E Chiara... quanti anni ha?

Chiara? Beh, ha quindici anni, ma è ancora una bambina noiosa...

What's the name of the café where Marco and Federico meet their friends?
www.esplora.com.au

6 Nella camera di Marco...

Ecco Fede, quant'è bello!

Il Circolino

Oh, guarda! Il PC di Marco!

Ciao! Come va? Ci vediamo domani al circolino. Senti, l'australiana è arrivata? Fede

CLICK CLICK

8

L'AUSTRALIANA!!!
Che cosa???

dove diavolo abiti? where the heck do you live?
 molto very
 lontano far
 abito I live
 vicino nearby
 solo only
 fifona wimp
 dai! come on!
 a in
 grande big
 così so
 pazzo crazy
 abita he lives
 piccolo small
 tipico typical
 italiano Italian
 guarda look
 simpatico likeable
 insomma whatever
 quanti anni hai? how old are you?
 ho sedici anni I'm sixteen years old
 quanti anni ha? how old is she?
 beh well
 ha quindici anni she's fifteen years old
 ancora still
 una bambina [f] a baby girl, a little girl
 al circolino at the [local] café
 arrivata [f] arrived
 che cosa? what?

Continua...



Riflettiamo

- Why do you think Chiara looks so scared on the back of Marco's Vespa?
- Have you ever been on the back of a motorbike or scooter? How does it feel or what do you think it would be like?

vero o falso?

- Chiara ha cinque anni.
- Laura ha sedici anni.
- Chiara abita a Sydney.
- Marco è italiano.



pratica

Alla festa

Ascolta

These people are talking at a party in Marco's flat in Rome. Listen to what they say.

SARA: Ciao.

ROBERTO: Ciao, sono Roberto, come ti chiami, **bella**?

SARA: Ciao, Roberto, sono Sara. Come va?

ROBERTO: Benissimo, grazie, e tu, Sara?

SARA: Non c'è male. Questa **festa** è molto **bella**, vero?

ROBERTO: Sì, è **forte**! **Scusa**, Sara, ma quanti anni hai?

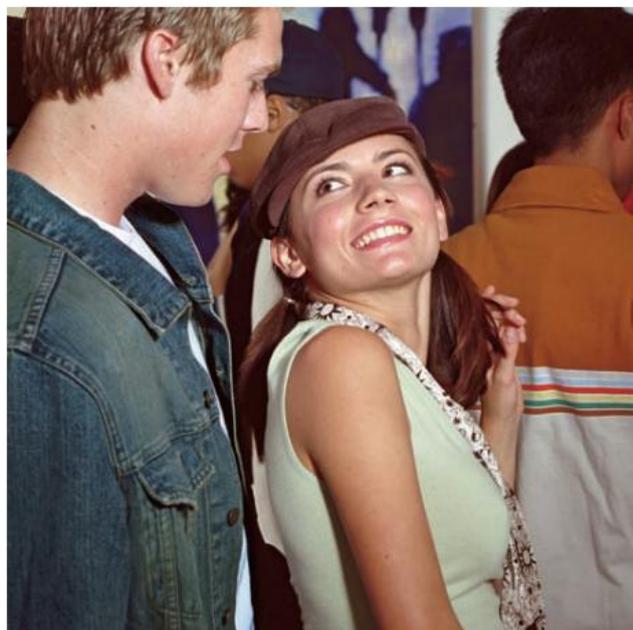
SARA: Ho quindici anni. E tu?

ROBERTO: Ho sedici anni. **Con chi** sei qui?

SARA: Sono qui con un'amica.

ROBERTO: Ah, bene! Quanti anni ha lei?

SARA: Ha quattordici anni... e ha anche un ragazzo **geloso**...



Riflettiamo

How is saying your age different between Italian and English?

Attività

Prepara

Make a poster of yourself with your profile and a photo. Answer these questions:

Come ti chiami? Come stai? Quanti anni hai?

Presenta

Introduce three friends using PowerPoint or Moviemaker. Include their profiles and photos.

Immagina

Imagine you're at a party and you meet:

- Roberto, who's there with Marco
- the host's father

Find a partner and role play the conversations you would have. Record your performances so you can monitor your progress.



E tu, dove abiti?



Ascolta

Listen to Marco introducing us to some friends using Skype.
Buongiorno a tutti. Allora...



1

...questo ragazzo è Paolo. Ha quindici anni e abita a Firenze in Toscana. Adesso è qui a Roma per studiare.



2

Questa è Giusi. Ha quattordici anni e abita a Milano in Lombardia.



3

Lui è Francesco e ha diciotto anni. È forte! Abita a Palermo in Sicilia.



4

Questa è Alexandra. Ha sedici anni. Lei abita a Wellington in Nuova Zelanda.



5

E lei ...è Chiara. Ha quindici anni. Lei abita a Melbourne in Australia. È qui in vacanza.



'Io abito a Roma in Italia. E tu, come ti chiami e dove abiti?'



Riflettiamo

Have you ever used Skype, or videoconferencing, where you can communicate using a webcam?

bella [f] beautiful
festa party
forte cool
scusa excuse me
con chi with whom
geloso jealous
a in [before cities]
in in [before countries, states
and regions]
adesso now
per studiare to study
in vacanza on holiday

15 quindici

Attività

Rispondi

Take turns answering Marco's questions.

Scrivi

Write a brief profile describing these Italian students:

Maria/15 anni/Pescara [Abruzzo]

Mario/14 anni/Rimini [Emilia-Romagna]

Alessandra/17 anni/Udine [Friuli Venezia-Giulia]

Francesco/13 anni/Assisi [Umbria]

Immagina

Imagine you are on an exchange program and you are introducing some new friends to your classmates. Work in pairs, and include their name, age and where they live [use the maps in the inside cover of **esplora!** and an atlas to think of place names]. Choose from these situations:

- you meet five Italian people from different regions
- you meet three people from Australia and two from New Zealand

immagina che...

scenario

Chiara and Laura are visiting the Colosseum where they make friends with a 'gladiator'. [The tourist guides at the Colosseum often dress up as gladiators!]

To ask questions in Italian, you just raise your voice at the end of a sentence, so you don't need to change any words or their order.

Listen to the scenario again, and repeat the statements and questions.

GLADIATOR: Buongiorno, signorina, come va?

CHIARA: Benissimo, grazie.

GLADIATOR: Come ti chiami?

CHIARA: Mi chiamo Chiara e questa è Laura. E Lei, signore, come si chiama?

GLADIATOR: Mi chiamo Romolo. Ma **dammi del tu**. Sono **giovane!**

CHIARA: Va bene, piacere Romolo.

GLADIATOR: Piacere, Chiara. Dove abiti?

CHIARA: Abito a Melbourne.

GLADIATOR: A Melbourne? Allora, sei **americana**, vero?

CHIARA: Che cosa? No, non sono americana!

GLADIATOR: **Di che nazionalità sei**, allora?

CHIARA: Sono **australiana**. Abito a Melbourne in Australia!

GLADIATOR: Ah, va bene.

CHIARA: Ma sono anche **italiana**. Mia mamma è australiana ma mio papà è **italiano**.

GLADIATOR: Di che nazionalità è Laura?

CHIARA: Laura è mia cugina. Lei è australiana, italiana e anche **inglese!** Il papà è **australiano** e la mamma è italiana e inglese.

GLADIATOR: Che confusione!

CHIARA: Vero! Tu, Romolo, di che nazionalità sei?

GLADIATOR: **Ma dai!** Sono italiano ma... **soprattutto sono romano!**

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD





Riflettiamo

- When do you need to change the adjectives describing nationality in Italian? Find examples of these adjectives in the Scenario.
- Why do you think Romolo the gladiator says he is '...above all a Roman...'?

Attività

Rispondi

Answer these questions:

Di che nazionalità è Chiara?

Di che nazionalità è Laura?

Di che nazionalità è il papà di Chiara?

Di che nazionalità è il papà di Laura?

Di che nazionalità è la mamma di Laura?

Di che nazionalità è Romolo?

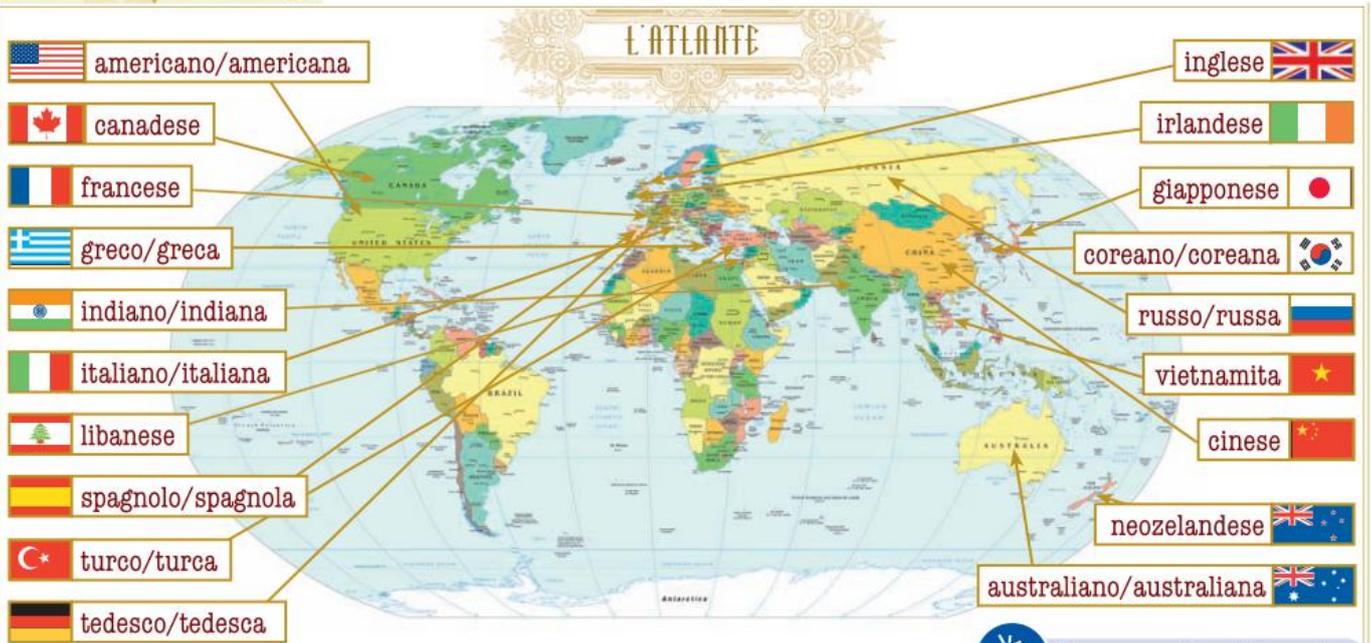
Di che nazionalità sei tu?

Scrivi a coppie

Find a partner and research the nationalities of these famous people [use the internet if you are not sure who they are]:

- Leonardo da Vinci
- Monica Bellucci
- Captain Cook
- Queen Elizabeth II
- Pope Benedict XVI

Le nazionalità



For more nationalities, go to www.esplora.com.au

dammi del tu! you can use the 'tu' form with me
 giovane young
 americana [f] American
 Di che nazionalità sei? What nationality are you?
 australiana [f] Australian
 italiana [f] Italian
 italiano [m] Italian
 inglese [m/f] English
 australiano [m] Australian
 ma dai! come on!
 soprattutto above all
 romano [m] Roman

Attività

Immagina a coppie

Imagine you meet a tourist guide dressed as a gladiator at the Colosseum. Work in pairs to write and perform a conversation, choosing one of these scenarios:

- an English student working as a 'gladiator' who thinks you are American
- an Italian 'gladiator' who is from Rome but you think they are German.



↑ Venezia



DOVE ABITI TU?

Many Italians live in old buildings that have been restored, especially in cities like Rome, Florence and Venice. 'Ancient' houses can even date back to the 15th or 16th century ... so how old would they be? Would you like to live in one of these places?



↑ Roma



↑ Roma



Colosseo e gladiatori

The *Colosseum* was completed in 80 A.D. and was a sophisticated stadium that could hold 55,000 people. The name *Colosseo* probably comes from a big bronze statue of an emperor which was about 38 metres high and was known as the *Colosso the giant*. The Emperor Nero had this statue built in his image.

Pulleys and ropes were operated by slaves to open passages, gates and cages to let wild animals into the arena. Animals were shipped from all over the world, and included rhinoceroses, zebras, tigers, lions and leopards. The Colosseum was occasionally flooded to stage naval battles. These were very popular, but it only happened rarely as it cost a lot to organise! Underneath the Colosseum there were schools for gladiators, storerooms full of weapons and a section for the animals.

Attività

Discuti in gruppo

What other famous ancient arenas are there in Italy or elsewhere? What are the most famous stadiums or arenas in your country?

Visita

Take a 360° virtual tour of the Colosseum at:

- www.rome.around.com
- www.italyguides.it/it/roma/monumenti/colosseo/colosseo.htm

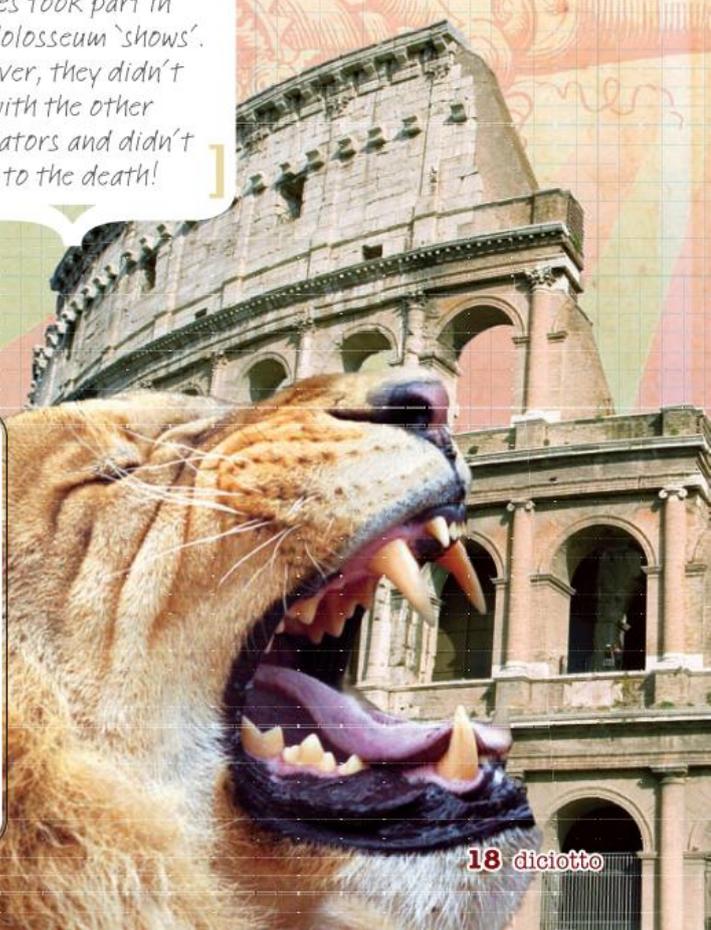


Pane e circo

Bread and circuses were what ancient Romans demanded from their emperors. For more than 500 years spectacular events like circus and theatre performances were held in amphitheatres like the Colosseum. These were the most important leisure activities for the people as there was no TV or internet in those times!

esplor@

Even though it was against the law, sometimes women and members of the upper classes took part in the Colosseum 'shows'. However, they didn't mix with the other gladiators and didn't fight to the death!





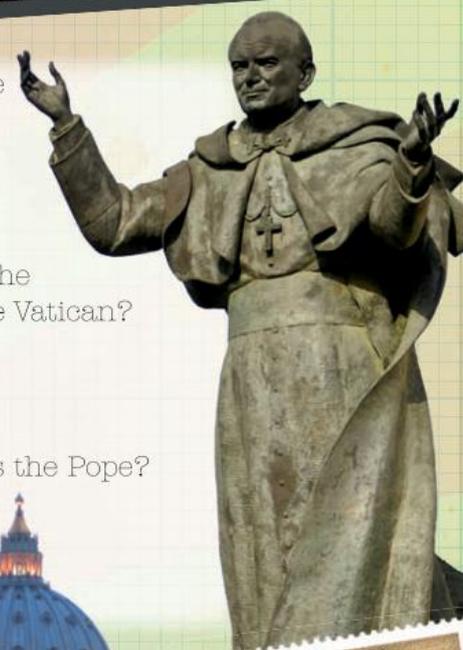
↑ Bologna

↑ Siena

↑ Roma

Answer these questions. Each correct answer is worth five points. The winner will wear the **esperto d'italiano** badge.

- 1 How many people live in the Vatican City?
 - a) 900
 - b) one million
 - c) 60 million
- 2 What is the name of the famous basilica in the Vatican?
 - a) St Benedict
 - b) St Peter's
 - c) St Felix
- 3 Who officially protects the Pope?
 - a) The Swiss Guards
 - b) The *carabinieri*
 - c) The police



@mag

La rivista

Gladiatori antichi e moderni



Riflettiamo

What do you think would be nice about living in an ancient city? What problems would there be?

The word 'gladiator' comes from the Latin word for an antique Roman sword, **gladius**. Gladiators were mostly war prisoners, slaves or people who'd been sentenced to death. Life as a gladiator was really tough – it could end in freedom or tragically in death.

Nowadays, the only 'gladiators' you see in Rome are tourist guides dressed up to guide people around the Colosseum. The term **gladiatore** is also used for supporters of the city's soccer team, **A.S. Roma**.



Attività

Trova

Find what these famous Latin expressions mean in English:

- Ave Cesare!
- Quo vadis?

Progetto

Create a comic strip about the life of a gladiator in ancient Roman times. Include his name, age and where he lives. Plan it with illustrations on a poster. You may create a fictional character or research the internet for gladiators who really existed in Roman times.





grammatica

avere [to have]

avere is an irregular verb. This means this verb has its own special pattern.

[io] ho	I have
[tu] hai	you have
[lui/lei] ha	he/she has
[Lei] ha	you have [fml]

Remember: the letter **acca**, *h*, is silent.

how old are you?

To say how old you are in Italian, you use the verb **avere** to have with **anni** years, instead of the English expression *I am... years old*.

[Io] ho... anni.
I am... years old.

[Tu] hai... anni.
You are... years old.

[Lui/Lei] ha... anni.
He/She is... years old.

[Lei] ha... anni. [fml]
You are... years old.

To ask someone how old they are, you say:

Quanti anni hai?
How old are you?

Quanti anni ha [lui/lei]?
How old is he/she?

Quanti anni ha, Lei? [fml]
How old are you?

the negative

To make a sentence negative, you use **non** in front of the main verb in the sentence.].

Non mi chiamo Claudia, mi chiamo Elisa.
My name's not Claudia, it's Elisa.

Tu non stai bene.
You're not well.

Laura non è vizziata.
Laura isn't spoiled.

Marco, tu non hai una casa grande.
Marco, you haven't got a big house.

abitare [to live]

abitare is a regular verb. To use **abitare** in a sentence, you leave out the ending **-are**, which is like the *to* in *to live*, and add particular vowels that change for **io**, **tu**, **lui/lei** and **Lei**.

[io] abito	I live
[tu] abiti	you live
[lui/lei] abita	he/she lives
[Lei] [fml] abita	you live

[Io] abito a Perth, in Australia.
I live in Perth, in Australia.

[Tu] abiti a Sydney, in Australia, vero?
You live in Sydney, in Australia, right?

Marco abita a Roma, in Italia.
Marco lives in Rome, in Italy.

Lina abita a Firenze, in Toscana.
Lina lives in Florence, in Tuscany.

Signore, Lei abita a Milano, vero?
Sir, you live in Milan, don't you?

I live in...

You always use the preposition **a** before cities and **in** before countries, states and regions. Have a look again at the sentences describing where people live in the explanation about **abitare** above.

'and' and 'but'

And, **e**, and **but**, **ma**, are conjunctions. This means that they connect parts of a sentence. Be careful, especially with **e**, as it's easy to mistake it for **è**:

e means *and*, **è** means *he/she/it is*. The accent makes all the difference!

Roberto è italiano e abita a Lucca.
Roberto is Italian and lives in Lucca.

Roberto è italiano ma abita a Sydney.
Roberto is Italian but lives in Sydney.

nationalities and adjectives

Nationalities are adjectives. An adjective is a word that describes nouns [people, animals, things].

Like all Italian adjectives, nationalities are shown in dictionaries in their masculine form, ending in **-o** or in **-e**. It's the same in the vocabulary list we use in this book... have a look at the **Vocabolario** on the next page.

Adjectives ending in **-e** do not change when describing singular masculine or feminine nouns:

The verb *abitare* follows the same pattern as the verb *chiamare* to call... the endings are the same.

Mark è inglese.
Mark is English.

Elisabeth è inglese.
Elizabeth is English.

Roger Fu è cinese.
Roger Fu is Chinese.

Amy Fu è cinese.
Amy Fu is Chinese.

Adjectives ending in -o change to -a when they describe a feminine noun:

Marco è italiano.
Marco is Italian.

Margherita è italiana.
Margherita is Italian.

Shane è australiano.
Shane is Australian.

Kylie è australiana.
Kylie is Australian.

Vocabolario

[io] abito [lui/lei] abita a dove abita [Lei]? [fml] dove abita [lui/lei]?	I live he/she lives in [before cities] where do you live? where does he/she live?	italiano libanese neozelandese russo spagnolo svizzero tedesco turco	Italian Lebanese New Zealander Russian Spanish Swiss German Turkish
dove abiti? in lontano vicino	where do you live? in [before countries, states and regions] far near	adesso ancora così molto solo soprattutto	now still so very only above all
[lui/lei] ha quindici anni ho sedici anni quanti anni ha [Lei]? [fml] quanti anni ha [lui/lei]?	he/she is fifteen years old I'm sixteen years old how old are you? how old is he/she? how old are you?	beh dai! dammi del tu! guarda! insomma ma dai! scusa	well come on! you can use the 'tu' form with me look! well then..., whatever... come on! excuse me
di che nazionalità è [Lei]? [fml] di che nazionalità è [lui/lei]?	what nationality are you? what nationality is he/she?	circolino fifona una bambina	[local] café wimp a little girl, a baby girl
di che nazionalità sei?	what nationality are you?	bello forte giovane grande pazzo piccolo simpatico tipico	beautiful cool young big crazy small likeable typical
è... sono...	he/she is I'm...	americano australiano canadese cinese coreano francese giapponese greco indiano inglese irlandese	American Australian Canadian Chinese Korean French Japanese Greek Indian English Irish

To improve your pronunciation listen to the *Capitolo due* audio material on the podcast. Pretend you are an Italian speaker in Italy... Try to copy the speakers exactly, imitating the tone and expression of the voices.

Pomeriggio con amici

In this chapter you will learn:

- to say where you and others come from
- to describe yourself and others
- to introduce people
- to exchange opinions about people
- about school in Italy
- about popular places to get together

puntata tre...

1 Laura has gone to Florence, but Chiara has decided to stay in Rome. She's determined to find Federico. Marco's not very happy to babysit Chiara any more. Shouldn't Federico be looking after her? Marco has arranged to see Federico at their favourite café. But will he turn up?



Macché! Non è la mia ragazza, sei pazzo? Si chiama Chiara. È l'amica australiana di Fede.



4 Più tardi a un tavolino...

Chiara, ti presento un mio grande amico, Massimiliano, o Max per gli amici. È svizzero, di Lugano. È molto simpatico e...

... molto intelligente e affascinante. Vero? Di dove sei, Chiara?

Mmm... Sono di Melbourne.



5 Più tardi...



What is the name of Federico's band?



www.esplora.com.au



Chiara, questa è Claudia, una grande amica mia e di Federico.

Ciao! Ah, tu sei la famosa amica australiana, vero?

Famosa? Magari!

Ciao, Claudia. Fede è qui?

6

No, mi dispiace, ma Fede è via.



Via? Ma dove diavolo è?

Accidenti! Questa tipa è proprio antipatica!

7

Guarda, guarda... che cos'è questo?

Adesso sono preoccupato però. Dov'è Fede?



8



Federico - ore 14.00-16.00, ogni giorno



Riflettiamo

- 1 Where do you usually meet up with your friends? Do you have a special meeting place like Marco and Federico's favourite café?
- 2 How do you and your friends usually get around? What means of transport do you use?

finalmente finally
 la tua nuova your new
 bionda blonde
 piccola small
 gli occhi marroni brown
 eyes
 macché not at all
 fortunato lucky
 a proposito by the way
 boh [slang] I don't know
 strano weird
 recentemente recently
 quella [f] that
 accidenti! blast!
 che fatica! how tiresome!
 un tavolino a table in a
 café
 ti presento I would like
 you to meet
 grande great
 svizzero Swiss
 di Lugano from Lugano
 affascinante charming
 di dove sei? where are
 you from?
 sono di I'm from
 dove diavolo...? where
 the heck...?
 tipa girl, type
 proprio really
 antipatica [f] unlikeable
 guarda guarda look here
 preoccupato [m] worried
 però though, however
 ogni every
 giorno day

Continua...

Vero o falso?

- 1 Max è italiano.
- 2 Marco è svizzero.
- 3 Max è di Lugano.
- 4 Claudia è antipatica.

Ecco, lei si chiama Marika, è spagnola e ha tredici anni. Di dov'è? È di Madrid.

Ciao,
io sono
Marika!

pratica

Gli amici internazionali

Listen to Claudia introducing some friends at her favourite café in Rome. She studies at an international school and her classmates come from all over the world.



Questa ragazza si chiama Alexandra e ha quindici anni. È neozelandese. È di Auckland.

Questo ragazzo si chiama Pablo. È un grande amico di Marika, è spagnolo, ma non è di Madrid, è di Barcellona. Ha dodici anni.



Questo ragazzo si chiama Kesuké, è giapponese e ha sedici anni. Kesuké è di Tokio.

Attività

Scrivi

Write a profile of each of Claudia's friends, including their name, age and where they come from.

Immagina

Imagine you are applying for an exchange-student place at an Italian language school in Rome. You have to send in your personal profile on video including answers to these questions... present yourself to the class.

Come ti chiami?

Quanti anni hai?

Di che nazionalità sei?

Di dove sei?



Questo ragazzo si chiama Kim ed è coreano. Ha quattordici anni ed è di Seul.

Com'è?

Listen to Chiara describing Federico and his friend Claudia in her personal travel video-journal.



Riflettiamo

- 1 Have you ever taken videos of yourself, family and friends with a video-camera or mobile phone?
- 2 Have you ever posted videos in public domain sites on the internet? What are the risks of doing this?

Words that describe nouns [people, animals and objects] are called adjectives. Note how adjectives change in Italian depending on whether they are describing a boy or a girl.



1 *Com'è Federico? Oh, è biondo, alto, magro, bello, elegante, ha gli occhi azzurri. Secondo me, è molto simpatico!*



2 *Com'è questa Claudia? Lei è alta, bionda, magra, un pò bella, elegante e ha gli occhi marroni. Per me, è antipatica...*

alto	tall	basso	short
giovane	young	anziano	old
bello	beautiful	brutto	ugly
biondo	blonde	bruno	brown [hair]
forte	strong	debole	weak
grasso	fat	magro	thin
elegante	elegant	piccolo	small

Ha gli occhi



1 azzurri



2 marroni



3 verdi



4 neri



5 ha gli occhiali

Attività

Descrivi

Get into pairs to describe Claudia's classmates. Ask each other questions like:

Com'è Marika?

Lei è alta, bella e castana.

Presenta

Introduce a friend of yours, using a photo. Include their name, age, nationality and a brief description.

Crea in gruppo

Work in a small group to create a PowerPoint presentation of some Italian celebrities or famous people from the past. Introduce them, including their name, city of origin and a brief description.

Immagina

Imagine showing your holiday photos in class and introducing four new friends you met who are from different countries.

com'è? What is he/she like?
secondo me according to me
per me to me



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au



immagina che...

scenario

Max is chatting with Claudia at the café. They are talking about Chiara and Marco.



Max: Allora, Claudia, l'amica di Federico è simpatica, vero?

Claudia: Mmm, Chiara? Sì, un po'. È abbastanza simpatica, ma così vanitosa.

Max: No, non è vanitosa, dai! È molto timida...

Claudia: Mmm, per me non è timida... Secondo me, è coraggiosa e sveglia, molto intelligente... ma non mi piace molto.

Max: Claudia, secondo me, tu sei gelosa di lei... un po'...

Claudia: Io non sono gelosa! Sei pazzo?

Max: Ti piace Federico, eh?

Claudia: Federico è molto carino, ma mi piace solo come amico...

Max: E Marco? Ti piace?

Claudia: Marco è sveglio, carino, divertente, e gentile, molto gentile... troppo gentile! Troppo gentile con Chiara!

Max: Claudia, sei terribile! Ma...

Claudia: Max, non è vero! Tu sei terribile e un po' birichino.

Max: È vero, sono abbastanza birichino.

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD





Riflettiamo

Which character do you like most from the *esplora!* cartoon story? Why? Which character would you most like to be... or have as a friend? Why?

When you look up adjectives in the Italian dictionary, remember that they will be listed in the masculine singular form only! So, they'll always end in *-o* or *-e*.

un po' a bit
abbastanza fairly
così so
vanitosa vain
timida shy
coraggiosa brave
sveglia smart
non mi piace I don't like
gelosa jealous
ti piace you like
mi piace I like
come as
divertente amusing
troppo too
birichino mischievous



1 vanitoso



2 timida



3 coraggioso



4 sveglia



5 gelosa



6 birichino



Attività

Scrivi

Say what you think about our characters Claudia, Max, Marco, Federico and Chiara. Start your sentences with *per me* or *secondo me*.

Di' a turno

Take turns talking about your classmates. Use words like *molto*, *così*, *troppo*, *un po'*:

- *Com'è [Paul / Ella...]?*
- *Secondo me è simpatico e divertente.*

Immagina

Imagine you are talking with a friend at the café *Il Circolino* in Rome. Get into pairs, write a conversation and act it out. Choose from one of these scenarios:

- exchange opinions about Max
- discuss your different opinions about Claudia



Il circolino e simili

There are many places to get together in Italy. Here are some of the more popular ones.

Il circolino

Il circolino is a typical gathering place, especially in small towns and villages. It is smaller than a city bar and less expensive. Here you can have drinks and snacks [like *panini*, *focacce* and *gelati*]. There may also be video games, outdoor tables, and parking spaces for scooters and bikes.

L'oratorio

An *oratorio* is a small hall or open space connected to the local church, and is open mostly on weekends. Teenagers and their families can meet here to play games like soccer and basketball.

La piazza

Every Italian city, town and village, large or small, has a central square, *la piazza*. People often gather here in the afternoon or evenings, especially in summer, and many local fairs and celebrations are held in *la piazza*.

Il corso

Many larger Italian cities have *il corso* – a main street that is closed to traffic [like a city mall]. *Il corso* has many shops and restaurants and people like to stroll up and down. This is called *fare le vasche*, which means *doing laps*! *Il Corso* is very popular with tourists as well.

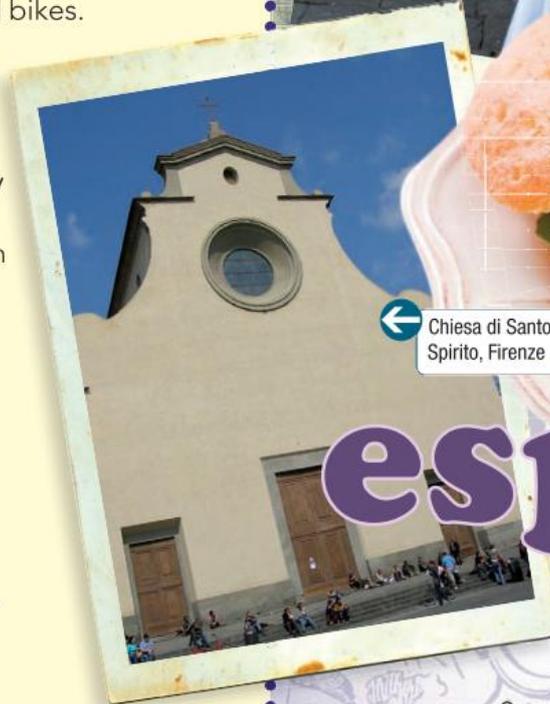
GELATERIA

PIZZERIA

BAR



← focaccia



← Chiesa di Santo Spirito, Firenze

esplor

Attività

Discuti e scrivi in gruppo

Get into groups and talk about where teenagers normally get together where you live. Make a list and decide on the most popular meeting place for people in your class.

↓ Piazza del Campo, Siena

↑ Il Corso, Milano

La scuola dell'obbligo

In Italy compulsory education begins for children when they are six years old. And they must stay at school until they are 16 years old.

The school day usually starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 1:00 p.m. Some schools have classes in the afternoon as well but most don't.

Students don't have to wear school uniform and don't have to use a special school bag or diary. Italian children often like to buy a new backpack every year or two!

Have a look at the table below to find out more about the Italian school system.

3–5 years old	asilo	kindergarten [not compulsory]
6–11 years old	scuola elementare	primary school
11–14 years old	scuola media	junior secondary school
14–19 years old	scuola superiore	secondary school



Riflettiamo

- 1 At what age do children start school in your country?
- 2 How old do you need to be to leave school?

In Italy, there are also some international schools, like the one Claudia goes to. International schools teach an international-based curriculum. Check out the website of this school in Udine: <http://www.udineis.org>.

@mag

La rivista

Attività

Trova e scrivi

Find out what subjects are taught at this school in Udine. Make a list and compare it with your school curriculum. Present your findings on a poster with pictures.

Gioca

Design an Italian-inspired school bag. Create a logo, choose colours and invent a name. The bag should represent your idea of Italy. Present your design to the class and vote for the design you like best. The creator of the most popular design wins the *esperto d'italiano* badge.

Progetto

You are participating in a competition to design and name a new square, *piazza*, in the Italian area of your city. Make a proposal, including a graphic design, name, slogan, and a short description.

Gelateria Produzione Artigianale



grammatica

where are you from?

To ask where you are from, you say:

Di dove sei?

Where are you from?

Di dov'è [lui/lei]?

Where is he/she from?

Di dov'è [Lei]?

Where are you from? [fml]

To say where you are from, you simply use the verb **essere** to be and the preposition **di** from:

[Io] sono di...

I am from...

[Tu] sei di...

You are from...

[Lui/Lei] è di...

He/She is from...

[Lei] è di....

You are from... [fml]

[Io] sono di Canberra.

I am from Canberra.

[Tu] sei di Christchurch.

You are from Christchurch.

[Lui] è di Milano, in Lombardia.

He is from Milan in Lombardy.

Laura è di Melbourne.

Laura is from Melbourne.

[Lei], signora, è di Tokio, vero?

You are from Tokyo, madam, aren't you?

adjectives to describe people

Adjectives are words that describe nouns [people, animals and objects], just like the nationalities you learned in *Capitolo due*. In Italian, adjectives must 'agree' with the thing they describe, so the adjective changes according to whether the thing is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

In Italian dictionaries, adjectives are listed in the masculine singular form, which ends in either -o or -e.

So, adjective endings work as follows:

-o	with masculine nouns [no change needed]
-a	with feminine nouns [change!]
-e	with masculine and feminine [no change needed]

Mi chiamo Marco. Sono alto, bello e intelligente.

My name is Marco. I am tall, handsome and intelligent.

Mi chiamo Chiara. Sono alta, bella e intelligente.

My name is Chiara. I am tall, beautiful and intelligent.

Questo è Max. È simpatico e divertente.

This is Max. He is likeable and fun.

Questa è Claudia. È simpatica e divertente.

This is Claudia. She is likeable and fun.

introducing other people

To introduce people, you use the expressions:

Ti presento...

I would like you to meet...

Ti presento Chiara.

I'd like you to meet Chiara.

Ti presento Marco.

I'd like you to meet Marco.

Ti presento Chiara e Laura.

I'd like you to meet Chiara and Laura.

You can also use the expressions **questo è [m]** and **questa è [f]**, as you've seen in *Capitolo uno*.

The expression **ecco** is also used to introduce people more informally [and to show or point out an animal or object].

Ecco Chiara!

Here is Chiara!

Ecco Marco!

Here is Marco!

Ecco Chiara e Laura!

Here are Chiara and Laura!

Ecco la mia casa!

Here is my house!

to exchange simple opinions

To exchange simple personal opinions, you use expressions like:

secondo me	<i>according to me</i>	non mi piace	<i>I don't like</i>
per me	<i>to me</i>	mi piace	<i>I like</i>
ti piace?	<i>do you like it?</i>		

Vocabolario

di dove è [Lei]? [fml] di dove è [lui/lei]? di dove sei? è di... sono di	where are you from? where is he/she from? where are you from? he/she is from... I'm from	strano svoglio timido vanitoso	weird smart shy vain
ecco... questa è [f]... questo è [m]... ti presento	here is... this is... this is... I would like you to meet	azzurri ha gli occhi... ha gli occhiali marroni neri verdi	blue he/she has... eyes he/she has glasses brown black green
com'è [lui/lei]? alto anziano basso bello biondo bruno brutto debole forte giovane grande grasso magro piccolo	what is he/she like? tall old short beautiful blonde brown [hair] ugly weak strong young big fat thin small	abbastanza così molto proprio troppo un po'	fairly so very really too a bit
affascinante antipatico birichino coraggioso divertente elegante fortunato geloso simpatico	charming unlikeable mischievous brave amusing elegant lucky jealous likeable	mi piace non mi piace per me secondo me ti piace	I like I don't like to me according to me you like
		finalmente ogni recentemente	finally every recently
		a proposito accidenti! boh [slang] guarda guarda macché mi dispiace	by the way blast! I don't know look here not at all I'm sorry

Un posto misterioso



In this chapter you will learn:

- to identify masculine and feminine nouns
- to use indefinite articles to indicate objects
- to indicate things you use in class
- to express simple likes and dislikes
- about the catacombs in Rome
- about Italian pasta

What is Federico doing in the catacombs? Is this spooky maze of underground tombs the best place to look for him? Chiara and Marco have joined forces to find Fede, with 'Macho' Max tagging along to help. Let's see if they are any closer to discovering where Federico is...



quattanta
quattro...

5 ...è molto strano! Per esempio, è sempre in ritardo.

6 Dopo, in ufficio...

What's the name of the tourist guide in the catacombs?

...Questo armadietto è di Federico. Forse è d'aiuto.

Grazie mille, Dottorressa.

www.esplora.com.au

7 Un libro, una penna, uno zaino, una cartina turistica, un tesserino, una camicia... e un poster!

Uh, guarda guarda, una rivista di sport. Forte!

8 Guarda! C'è un festival di musica a Pompei. Forse Fede ha questo per la testa...

posto place
 troppo too
 buio dark
 silenzioso quiet
 un cimitero a cemetery
 vedi you see
 che that
 c'è there is
 una tomba a tomb
 forse maybe
 mi fa venire i brividi it gives me the creeps
 antichi ancient
 sotterranei underground
 galleria gallery
 lunga long
 una cripta a crypt
 fafone wimp
 Dottorressa [f] Doctor [title used for a woman with a PhD]
 Le presento [fm] I'd like you to meet
 oggi today
 siete [pl] you are
 del mio of my
 ragazzi kids
 lavora works
 dopo after
 scuola school
 sempre always
 in ritardo late
 ufficio office
 armadietto locker
 d'aiuto of help
 grazie mille thank you very much
 un libro a book
 una penna a pen
 uno zaino a backpack
 una cartina turistica a tourist map
 un tesserino an ID card
 una camicia a shirt
 una rivista a magazine
 piazza square
 mezzanotte midnight
 per la testa on his mind

Continua...

Vero o falso?

- 1 È un posto buio e silenzioso.
- 2 C'è una galleria lunga 35 chilometri.
- 3 C'è uno zombi.
- 4 Una cripta è un armadietto.

Riflettiamo

- 1 Would you like to visit an ancient underground cemetery like the catacombs in Rome?
- 2 Why do you think these tombs were built underground?

pratica

Molti articoli usati

Ascolta

Marco's friends are looking at an internet site for second-hand things they want to buy.



Riflettiamo

You now know that all nouns [people, animals and things] in Italian have a gender [i.e. classified as masculine or feminine]. What do you think about that? Why is this sometimes difficult for English speakers?



Riflettiamo

Do you know about any other languages that also use gender classification? See if you can find out. Start by investigating the languages spoken in the neighbouring countries of Italy.

Attività

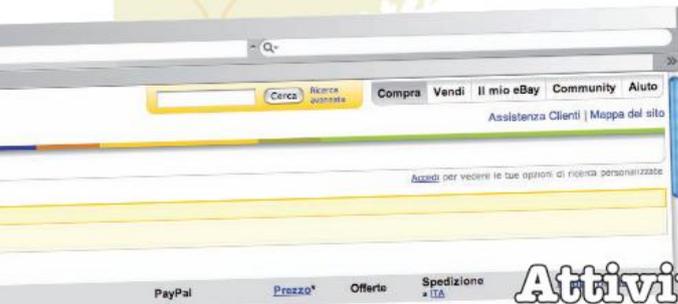
Scopri e di'

All Italian nouns are grammatically classified as either masculine [m] or feminine [f]. Can you work out how to recognise them? Read through the *Grammatica* section on page 40 and see if you can identify whether the words in the list on page 41 are masculine or feminine in Italian.

Leggi e scrivi

Read *Puntata quattro* on pages 32 and 33 and try to find all the masculine and feminine words used in the cartoon. Make a list and compare your list with those of your friends. Did you find them all?

Guarda! Ecco un videogioco.
E questa è una chitarra. Bella!



Attività

Ecco anche un compasso, un videogioco per la PlayStation, uno zaino, uno stereo, un lettore CD, un lettore MP3, una stilografica e una calcolatrice.

Scrivi

Do you remember filling in a list when you were ordering your school books? Here are the Italian words for more school stuff. Write them in your exercise book and include the appropriate indefinite article [*un, uno, un' or una*] for each item. You should be able to work out the gender by the last letter of each word.]



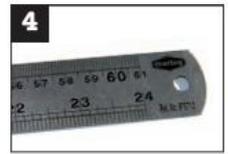
scotch [m]



astuccio



penna



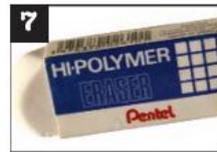
riga



agenda telefonica



cartella



gomma



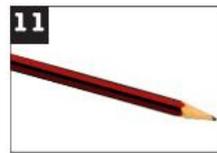
quaderno



raccoglitore [m]



evidenziatore [m]



matita



colla

Chiedi a turno

Taking turns, ask your classmates what school equipment they have with them. Use these examples as a model.

Paul, hai un astuccio in classe?

Si, ecco.

Luisa, hai una chitarra in classe?

No, non ho una chitarra in classe, ma a casa.

Immagina

Imagine being at an Italian school on a student exchange program. Today is your first day in your new class. Get into pairs to write and perform conversations you would have, choosing one of these situations:

- You have left your pencil case at home and ask an Italian classmate if you can borrow some school things... but your classmate doesn't have any to spare.
- You don't have any school books. Ask the librarian if you can borrow them.

Remember to pronounce each vowel clearly when speaking Italian. A good strategy is to read out loud, and imitate the sounds and tones of Italian speakers.

Remember to use the expressions *per favore*, *grazie* and *prego* when asking someone to do something for you.

immagina che...

scenario

Chiara wants to buy something in the catacombs souvenir shop, but there's a long queue. Two tourists at the counter are holding everyone up because they can't make up their minds what they want. Chiara is getting impatient!

SIGNORA: Allora, questo è un calendario di Roma. Ti piace?

SIGNORE: Sì, mi piace tanto. È bello e colorato, ma un po' costoso.

SIGNORA: È un po' costoso, eh? Ecco una cartolina. È molto bella! Va bene per il tuo amico Paolo?

SIGNORE: No, non va bene, e non mi piace per niente. Ma dai! È troppo piccola.

SIGNORA: Allora, ecco una agenda tascabile. È elegante.

SIGNORE: Abbastanza... Ma ho già una agenda elettronica di Roma. Questo diario è più elegante.

SIGNORA: Non mi piace. Oh, guarda: un tappetino per il computer, è molto carino, con un'immagine grande di Roma.

SIGNORE: No, questo non mi piace per niente. È brutto.

CHIARA: Scusi, signore, che cosa Le piace, allora? C'è una fila lunga adesso...

SIGNORE: Mi dispiace, sono molto indeciso...

SIGNORA: Io sono indecisa anche, ma tu sei una ragazzina maleducata!



Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD



36 trentasei



Riflettiamo

What things do you like to bring home as souvenirs when you go on holidays? What souvenirs would you buy if you went to Italy?

un calendario a calendar
tanto a lot
costoso expensive
una cartolina a postcard
per niente not at all
[negative]
una agenda tascabile a
pocket diary
abbastanza quite
una agenda elettronica an
electronic diary
un tappetino a mouse pad
un'immagine [f] an image
Le piace [fml] you like
una fila a queue
indeciso undecided
una ragazzina a young girl
maleducata bad-mannered



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au

Attività

Trova

Find as many adjectives as you can to describe the following list of nouns. Look in the *Vocabolario* lists in *Capitoli uno, due, tre e quattro* and see who can find the most adjectives that could describe each thing or person. [Be careful – they all have to make sense!] Have a look at this one as an example:

Un libro australiano, costoso, divertente, facile, tascabile, musicale e moderno!

una agenda	un computer	un esercizio
una fila	un libro	una ragazza
un ragazzo	una scuola	uno sport
uno strumento		

Presenta

Introduce these items, using *ecco* or *questo/questa è* and include a short description. For example:

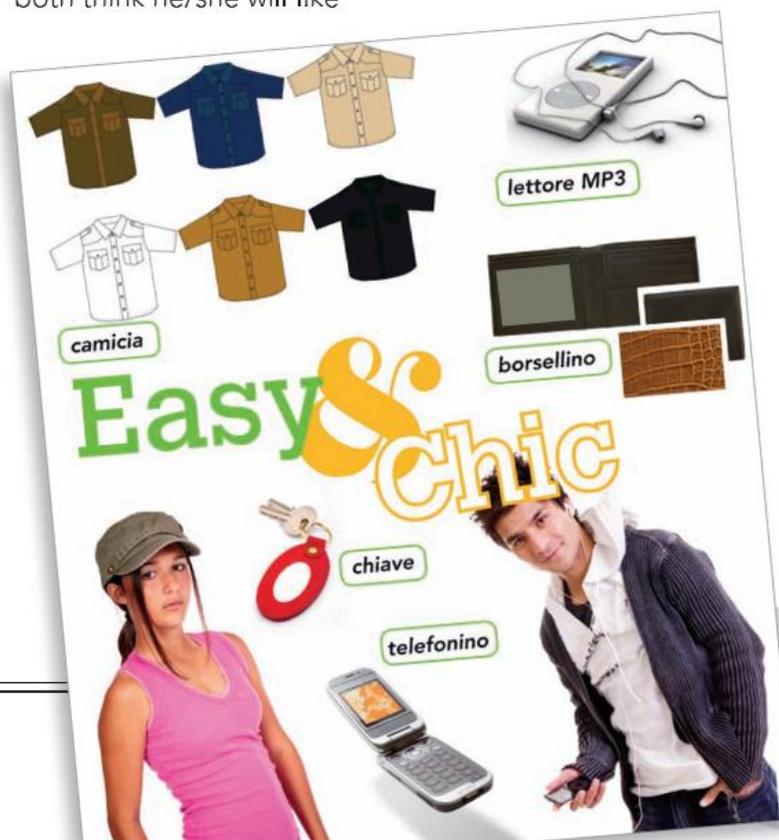
Ecco una camicia. È molto bella.

Questo è un libro interessante.

Immagina

Imagine you want to buy someone *un regalo* a birthday present. Get into pairs and write a conversation for one of these scenarios:

- the present is for one of your best friends who loves funky, fashionable things
- the present is for your teacher so you'll have to talk about what you both think he/she will like



Sito italiano

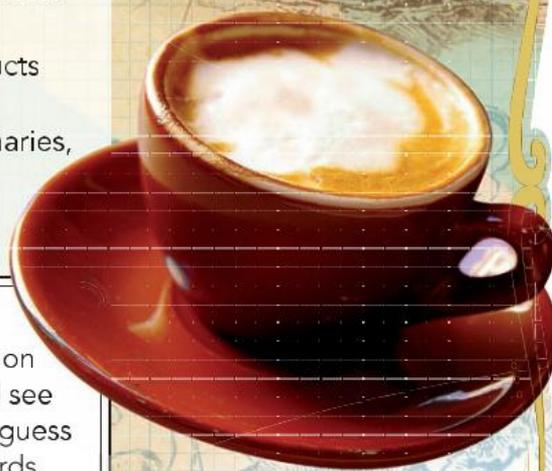
Some Italians like using the internet for shopping. This is called *lo shopping online*. What's really popular is the Italian e-bay site that sells all kinds of second-hand things. Other Italian sites for shopping are:

- www.coolzone.it for IT and music products [like MP3s]
- www.sussidiario.it for books and dictionaries, also on CD-Roms and DVDs

Attività

Trova e leggi

Look at some of the Italian websites listed on this page. Check out their home page and see how many words you already know or can guess the meaning of. Make a list of all these words. See who can find the most!



Riflettiamo

Do you think coffee came from Italy? Italians love their **espresso** and **cappuccino**, but coffee didn't originate in Italy! Hundreds of years ago merchants who travelled around the world brought coffee back to Italy and Europe. They had seen coffee beans used in drinks in Ethiopia [Africa] and the Middle East.



Il labirinto di Roma: le catacombe

The catacombs in Rome are an ancient, underground cemetery complex which is more than 2000 years old. It is a network of connecting corridors and rooms where early Christians cut burial spaces into the 'corridor' walls, and then sealed bodies in with bricks or marble. When more space was needed, additional 'galleries' were dug underneath the first ones, so there ended up being layers of bodies!

The catacombs are very popular with tourists, as they can walk along the underground corridors and see the ancient bones and skulls along the walls. If you go there, a guided tour is a good idea... unless you'd like to get lost in the maze of underground tombs!

esplor@



Riflettiamo

What other ancient civilisation is famous for its tombs? Hint: think about pyramids!

Lots of old cemeteries in Australian and New Zealand cities have guided 'history tours'. The guides tell you about interesting historical figures buried in the cemetery, the stories behind big or unusual monuments and tombstones, or other little-known facts. Did you know that Queen Victoria Market in Melbourne is actually built on top of an old cemetery? Do you know any other facts about historic cemeteries where you live?

Attività

Cerca e discuti

Make your own poster to advertise the catacombs. Find information and pictures of the catacombs in Rome at www.catacombe.roma.it.





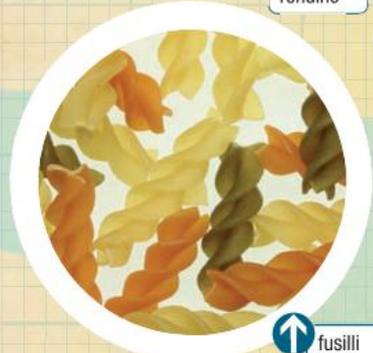
↑ cappelletti



↑ farfalle



↑ nido di rondine



↑ fusilli

@mag

La rivista

Attività

Guarda e indovina

Look at the different pasta shapes in the pictures on this page. See if you can work out the Italian name of the pasta shaped like:

- strings
- little hats
- butterflies
- spirals
- bird nests

Controlla e presenta

Have a look at the pasta section when you are next in a supermarket to see all the varieties of pasta. See how many different shapes of pasta you can find, then bring some samples into class.



Pasta per tutti

Italian pasta comes in an amazing variety of shapes. There is the simple string-like *spaghetti*, ribbon-shaped *fettuccine* and *linguine*, short tubes like *maccheroni* and *penne*, and stuffed pasta, such as *ravioli* and *tortellini*.

The basic ingredients are usually the same, but the different shapes and surfaces make pasta more suitable for different sauces or toppings.

Some varieties of pasta are common all over Italy, but some are the speciality of a region or town. There are always new pasta shapes being invented by chefs or deli owners.

The name of a pasta often reflects its shape. *Spaghetti*, the most well-known kind of pasta, comes from the Italian word *spago* string. Do you think *spaghetti* looks just like string? Look at the other kinds of pasta shapes on this page.

Progetto

Create a presentation for your 'own' pasta variety: draw it, list the sauces that go well with it and invent an appropriate 'shape-name'. Add an Italian slogan to advertise your newly invented pasta!

grammatica

masculine and feminine nouns

You can often tell if a noun in Italian is masculine or feminine by the last letter of the word.

Most nouns that end in **-o** in the singular are masculine.

diario diary	astuccio pencil case	ragazzo boy
------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------

Most nouns that end in **-a** in the singular are feminine.

cartella schoolbag	penna pen	ragazza girl
------------------------------	---------------------	------------------------

Nouns that end in **-e** in the singular can be masculine or feminine. So you have to check in word lists for [m] or [f] to find out what their gender classification is. Then you just have to remember them!

evidenziatore is masculine

calcolatrice is feminine

the indefinite article

A or *an*, called the indefinite article, has different forms in Italian.

un is used before masculine nouns:

un libro a book	un diario a diary
---------------------------	-----------------------------

uno is used before masculine nouns beginning with **z** or **s + consonant**. [A consonant is any letter that is not a vowel.] There are other letter combinations you will learn at a later stage.

uno zaino	uno studente
------------------	---------------------

una is used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant:

una ragazza	una studentessa
--------------------	------------------------

un' is used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel:

un'amica	un'agenda
-----------------	------------------

I like it

To say that you like something in Italian, you use the expression **mi piace**. As you can see, you do not need to use the personal pronoun **io** / to express likes or dislikes in Italian. The verb **piacere** in Italian works in a different way from the English equivalent *to like*.

Ti piace...?

Do you like...?

Le piace? [fml]

Do you like...?

Mi piace...

I like.....

Non mi piace...

I don't like...

To say how much you like someone or something, you can use simple expressions like:

forse	maybe
troppo	too
tanto	a lot
abbastanza	quite
per niente	[not] at all [negative]

È troppo difficile.

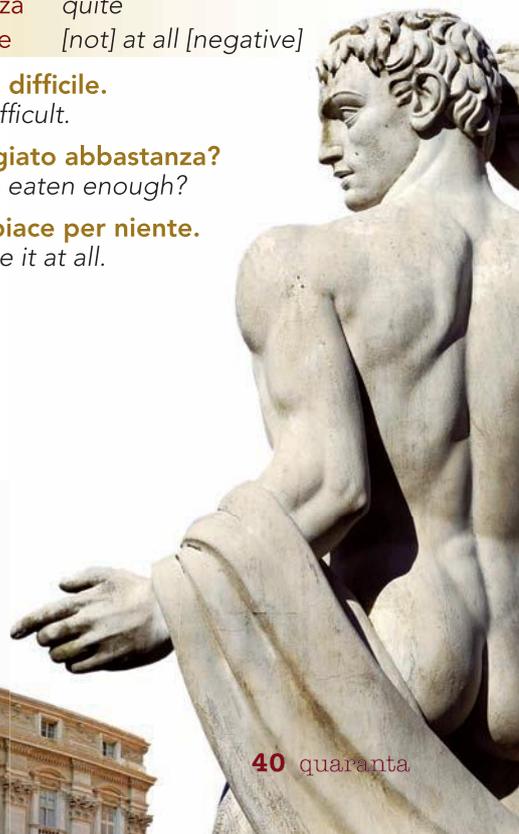
It's too difficult.

Hai mangiato abbastanza?

Have you eaten enough?

Non mi piace per niente.

I don't like it at all.



Vocabolario

un	a/an [for masculine words]	ragazzina	young girl
uno	a/an [for masculine words beginning with z, or s + consonant]	regalo	gift
una	a/an [for feminine words]	riga	ruler
un'	a/an [for feminine words beginning with a vowel]	rivista	magazine
		scuola	school
		sport	sport
		stereo	stereo system
		stilografica	fountain pen
		strumento musicale	musical instrument
		tappetino	mouse pad
		tesserino	ID card
		tomba	tomb
		ufficio	office
		videogioco	videogame
		zaino	backpack
agenda telefonica	address book	le piace [fml]	you like
armadietto	locker	mi piace	I like
astuccio	pencil case	ti piace	you like
calcolatrice [f]	calculator		
calendario	calendar		
camicia	shirt		
cartina turistica	tourist map		
cartolina	postcard		
chitarra	guitar		
cimitero	cemetery		
compasso	compass		
cripta	crypt		
diario	diary		
dottoressa [f]	Doctor [title used for woman with a PhD]		
esercizio	exercise		
evidenziatore [m]	highlighter		
fila	queue		
galleria	gallery		
gomma	rubber		
immagine [f]	image		
lettore CD [m]	CD player		
lettore MP3 [m]	MP3 player		
libro	book		
matita	pencil		
penna	pen		
piazza	square		
posto	place		
quaderno	exercise book		
raccoglitore [m]	loose leaf folder		
		buio	dark
		c'è	there is
		costoso	expensive
		dopo	after
		in ritardo	late
		Le presento [fml]	I'd like you to meet
		lungo	long
		mezzanotte	midnight
		oggi	today
		sempre	always
		silenzioso	quiet
		vedi	you see

Sometimes it's tricky to remember whether words are masculine or feminine in Italian, especially when they end in *-e*. One way to remember is to use word association or visualisation when you are learning vocabulary. For example, when you learn *calcolatrice* a calculator think of a girl using a pink calculator and you'll never forget that *calcolatrice* is feminine! When you learn *lettore MP3* think of a cool guy with an MP3 player! You are really just tricking your brain into remembering the word that way... but it works! Can you think of any other 'tricks' to remember masculine and feminine words?

La visita archeologica



In this chapter you will learn:

- to use some definite articles
- to describe houses and places
- to ask and tell the date
- to count from 20 to 100
- simple requests with **vorrei** (*I would like*)
- about Pompeii
- about ancient Roman architecture

puntata
cinque...



From the catacombs in Rome ... to a volcano in Pompeii! Marco's peaceful life has changed drastically since Federico disappeared and left him to look after Chiara. Marco's only way out is to find Federico. Will he get away with wagging school while he's being dragged around Italy?

1 Nella piazza di Pompei...



2



3 A Pompei, agli scavi...



4





What is the name of the volcano that destroyed Pompeii?



www.esplora.com.au

- nella [f] in the
- gite guidate guided excursions
- uffa! how annoying!
- città city
- antica [f] ancient
- sai you know
- la storia history
- agli scavi excavation site
- da visitare to visit
- il foro forum
- il tempio temple
- la basilica cathedral
- per fortuna luckily/fortunately
- corta short
- agosto August
- anno year
- d.C. (dopo Cristo) A.D. (anno Domini)
- l'eruzione eruption
- del of the
- vulcano volcano
- la distruzione destruction
- l'altare altar
- l'imperatore emperor
- sacro [m] sacred
- nel [m] in the
- mezzo half
- distrutto destroyed
- l'anfiteatro amphitheatre
- capolavoro masterpiece
- la Villa del Mistero the Villa of Mysteries
- l'atrio atrium
- comunque however
- senti listen
- da vedere to see
- stanchissima really tired
- dove 6? [dove sei?] where R U? [where are you?]
- CAP [Codice di Avviamento Postale] postcode

5 Più tardi nel sito archeologico...



6



7



8



Riflettiamo

- 1 What does an archaeologist do? What do you think you would see at an archaeological site?
- 2 Would you like to be an archaeologist? Why? What archaeological sites would you like to visit, or have you already been to one?

vero o falso?

- 1 Il concerto non è finito.
- 2 Pompei è una città moderna.
- 3 Secondo Marco, la storia non è interessante.
- 4 Chiara è stanchissima.

pratica



La casa di Livinia a Pompei

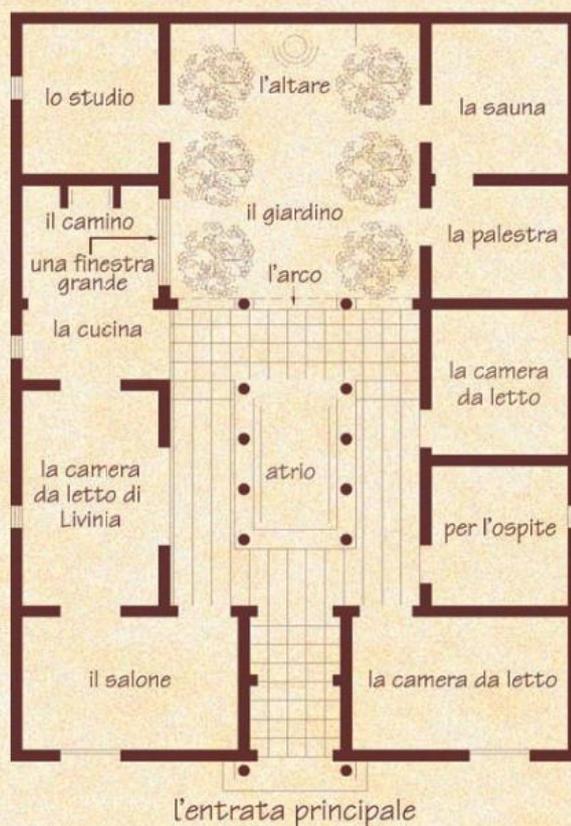
Ascolta

This archaeologist is reading a page from a journal written by Livinia – a citizen of ancient Pompeii. [Livinia's diary was written in Latin but it's been translated into Italian for you.]

Oggi è il 22 agosto, anno 79 d.C.

Questa è **la mia casa**. **Lo stile** è romano, naturalmente! Qui c'è l'atrio: è **l'entrata principale**. Poi, c'è **il giardino**: è grande e molto verde. Questa è **la cucina**, non è grande ma è molto bella. C'è **una finestra grande**. In cucina non c'è **la stufa** ma c'è **il camino**. Questa è **la mia camera da letto**, e questa è **la camera per l'ospite**. Ti piace questa? È **la palestra**. Questo è **il salone principale**. Ho anche **lo studio** personale e questo è **l'altare** sacro di famiglia. Naturalmente, c'è anche **la sauna** per il relax. Per finire, ecco **l'arco** per **andare** in giardino.

La casa di Livinia



Attività

Leggi e unisci

Read Livinia's journal entry again and say these words with their correct definite articles: *il, lo, la* or *l'*.

casa	stile	atrio	entrata	giardino	cucina
camera da letto	palestra	altare	sauna	arco	

Leggi e trova

Read *Puntata cinque* on pages 42 and 43 again and find all the words with a definite article *il, lo, la* or *l'*. Compare your list with those of your classmates... did you find them all?

Disegna e descrivi

Design your dream house. Draw a plan on poster paper or in PowerPoint. Label each room in Italian and write a description. Then present it to the class. Your class could even vote for the best Italian dream house.



Riflettiamo

- Do most people in your class live in a house or a flat? How many rooms are in your house or flat? What's your favourite room at home?
- What are the differences between where people live in the city and in the country? What about holiday houses... how are they different from someone's home?

Che giorno è oggi?



The letter combinations *-ca*, *-co* and *-cu* are pronounced as *ka*, *ko* and *koo*.

24 agosto

martedì

28 luglio

mercoledì

30 giugno

giovedì

To say the *first* of each month in Italian, you do not use the word *uno* *one*. Instead you have to use *primo* [just like in English].

il primo gennaio
the first of January

il primo febbraio
the first of February

Remember that in Italian, the months are not written with a capital letter.

Attività

Ascolta

Listen to the numbers.

venti	20	trenta	30
ventuno	21	trentuno	31
ventidue	22	trentadue	32
ventitré	23	trentatré	33
ventiquattro	24	trentaquattro	34
venticinque	25	trentacinque	35
ventisei	26	trentasei	36
ventisette	27	trentasette	37
ventotto	28	trentotto	38
ventinove	29	trentanove	39
		quaranta	40

Ascolta

Listen to the months in Italian.

gennaio	January
febbraio	February
marzo	March
aprile	April
maggio	May
giugno	June
luglio	July
agosto	August
settembre	September
ottobre	October
novembre	November
dicembre	December

Scrivi e di'

Write and say today's date in Italian. You could write the date up on the board in the classroom every day!

la mia casa my house
lo stile style
l'entrata entrance
principale main
il giardino garden
la cucina kitchen
una finestra window
la stufa stove
il camino fireplace
la camera da letto bedroom
la camera room
l'ospite guest
la palestra gymnasium
il salone lounge room
lo studio study
l'altare altar
la sauna sauna
l'arco arch
andare to go



immagina che...



scenario

Chiara is in the souvenir shop in Pompeii. There are so many things to buy, it's hard to choose. Marina, the shop assistant, is very patient!



Chiara: Buongiorno, signora!

Marina: Buongiorno, ma dammi del tu, per favore. Mi chiamo Marina. Allora, Che cosa vorresti oggi?

Chiara: Allora... vorrei un libro...

Marina: Va bene. Che libro?

Chiara: Il libro su Pompei e il Vesuvio, per favore.

Marina: Va bene. Poi?

Chiara: Mmm, vorrei anche una cartolina di Pompei...

Marina: Ma che cartolina, scusa?

Chiara: La cartolina panoramica con il vulcano Vesuvio.

Marina: Va bene. Altro?

Chiara: Forse vorrei un adesivo...

Marina: Che adesivo?

Chiara: Oh, scusa, l'adesivo rosso con il simbolo di Pompei.

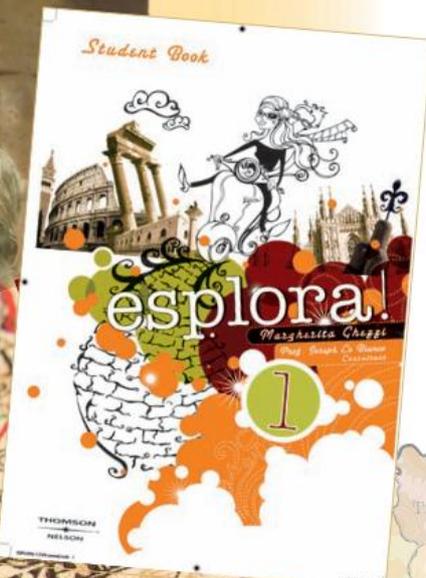
Marina: Va bene. Basta così?

Chiara: Sì, basta. Grazie mille! Tu sei molto paziente. Quanto è in totale?

Marina: In totale, 48 euro...

Chiara: Uno sconto, per favore?

Marina: Mmm, 41 euro! Va bene?



Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD



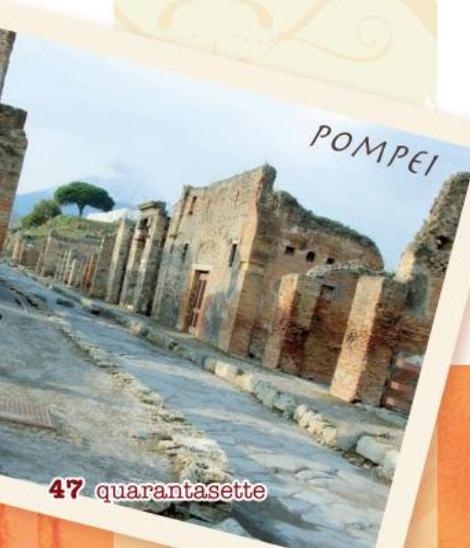
Attività

€40



Remember that adjectives ending in *-o* describe masculine nouns. The ending must change to *-a* when describing feminine nouns.

vorresti... you would like ...
 vorrei... I would like ...
 che libro? what book?
 su on/about
 poi then
 cartolina postcard
 panoramica panoramic
 altro? something else?
 adesivo sticker
 il simbolo symbol
 basta così? will that be all /
 anything else?
 basta that's it/that's all
 paziente patient
 quanto è? how much does it
 cost?
 uno sconto a discount



Chiedi e rispondi a coppie

In pairs, talk about the items in the pictures, using this example as a model:

Vorrei una penna.

Che penna?

La penna nera e stilografica. Grazie.

Prego.

Quanto è?

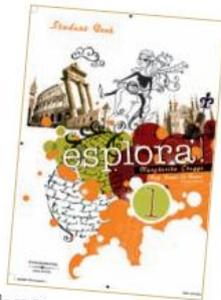
40 euro.



1 adesivo
(piccolo/di Pompei/€5)



2 stilografica
(rosso/moderno/€40)



3 libro
(costoso/di archeologia/€49)



4 cartolina (grande/di Pompei €1)



5 zaino
(piccolo/colorato/€52)



6 calendario
(colorato/di Pompei/€19)

Ascolta

Listen to these numbers.

quaranta	40	cinquanta	50
quarantuno	41	sessanta	60
quarantadue	42	settanta	70
quarantatré	43	ottanta	80
quarantaquattro	44	novanta	90
quarantacinque	45	cento	100
quarantasei	46		
quarantasette	47		
quarantotto	48		
quarantanove	49		

Immagina

Imagine you're shopping for souvenirs in Pompeii. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have in one of the following scenarios:

- you're looking at three different things, and you don't know which one to choose
- you're looking for things you could use at school [e.g. rulers, pens] with a Pompeii theme. You don't want to spend too much.

La tragedia di Pompei

The volcano Vesuvius erupted on 24 August 79 A.D. Nobody could save the wealthy cities of Pompeii and Herculaneum which were part of the powerful Roman Empire. They were completely buried under burning lava. Everybody died, and the cities were forgotten for centuries.

For years, archaeologists have been working to uncover these cities from layers of lava and dirt. Pompeii is especially popular with tourists because you can see the unearthed city – like an ancient ghost town. You can see a bakery as it was operating at the time of the eruption...all preserved by the volcanic ash. It's quite spooky, but it's amazing to see the ancient city 'frozen in time'.



Riflettiamo

- 1 Are there any active volcanoes near where you live? Or maybe there's a 'former' volcano that's thousands of years old, and is now 'inactive'. Have you ever visited any places like this in Australia or in another country?
- 2 Did you know the biggest volcano in our solar system is actually in space, on Mars? It's 24 kilometres high and is still active.

esplor@

Attività

Ricerca e crea

Do a presentation on what you think is interesting about Pompeii. Use the internet and other sources to do your research then create a presentation in PowerPoint or in a poster. You could work in pairs or in a small group. Try to include some of this 'basic' information:

- In what Italian region is Pompeii located?
- How much does it cost to visit the ruins?
- Who started the Pompeii excavations and when?

Ricerca e scrivi

Research and write about another kind of natural disaster you have heard about. It could be from ancient times or something more recent.

L'architettura romana

La casa

In Roman times wealthy families lived in a city house called a *domus*. *Domus* is the Latin word for a one- or two-storey house with a central courtyard *atrium*. In the country, the houses were called *ville*, and they were designed to enjoy views of the outdoors and the surrounding countryside.

Il tempio

The temple, *templum*, was used by priests for religious rituals. Many houses also had their own private temple, to offer sacrifices to the gods and to bring good fortune.

Il bagno pubblico

The public baths, or *thermae*, were not just baths, they were more like an ancient luxury spa centre! The 'baths' included heated and cold pools for bathing and relaxing. They were also a place to meet and talk together as you bathed and relaxed [a bit like a modern sauna/spa centre]. At *il bagno pubblico* there were shops, libraries, meeting rooms and places for exercise. Some of these centres saw 1600 bathers a day... the rich Romans loved their spa!

@mag
La rivista

CAP: il Codice di Avviamento Postale

In Italy postcodes are called CAP (Codice di Avviamento Postale), and they use five digits. When saying them, the first two digits are expressed as a whole number. For example, 50100 is *cinquanta-cento*, 21040 is *ventuno-zero-quaranta*.

To find all the Italian postcodes go to: <http://www.nonsolocap.it>.



Riflettiamo

Think about the places the ancient Romans used for relaxation and entertainment [public baths, amphitheatres etc.]. What are the modern equivalents in your country?

Progetto

Design a house, either a *domus* or a *villa*, in the style of Roman architecture. Include a description in Italian and appropriate pictures. You may draw it, or use an example taken from a reference book or the internet.



grammatica

the definite article

In Italian, the definite article *the* has different forms in the singular:

il before masculine nouns:

il libro	il quaderno	il giardino
<i>the book</i>	<i>the exercise book</i>	<i>the garden</i>

lo before masculine nouns beginning with **z** and **s** + consonant [any letter that is not a vowel]. There are other letter combinations you will learn at a later stage.

lo zaino	lo studente	lo spazio
<i>the backpack</i>	<i>the student</i>	<i>the space</i>

la before feminine nouns:

la borsa	la scuola	la classe
<i>the bag</i>	<i>the school</i>	<i>the class</i>

l' before masculine and feminine nouns beginning with a vowel [a, e, i, o or u]:

l'amica	l'amico	l'orologio
<i>the friend (girl)</i>	<i>the friend (boy)</i>	<i>the clock/watch</i>

talking about the date

To say the date in Italian, you use the masculine *il* in front of the numbers *due* 2 to *trentuno* 31, followed by the name of the month.

Natale è il 25 dicembre.

Christmas is on the 25th of December.

The only exception to the rule is the first of each month. Then you use the word *primo* *first* after the *il*.

il primo gennaio

the first of January

going shopping

Some simple expressions to use when you go shopping are:

Che cosa vorresti?	<i>What would you like?</i>
Vorrei...	<i>I'd like...</i>
Quanto è?	<i>How much is it?</i>
Quanto viene?	<i>How much does it come to?</i>

Vocabolario

il the [before masculine nouns]
 lo the [before masculine nouns beginning with
 z, or s + consonant]
 la the [before feminine nouns]
 l' the [before all nouns beginning with vowels]

l'arco	arch
l'atrio	atrium
la camera	room
la camera da letto	bedroom
il camino	fireplace
la casa	house
la cucina	kitchen
l'entrata	entrance
la finestra	window
il giardino	garden
l'ospite	guest
la palestra	gymnasium
il salone	lounge room
la sauna	sauna
lo stile	style
lo studio	study
la stufa	stove
la villa	villa

l'altare	altar
l'anfiteatro	amphitheatre
l'anno	year
l'archeologia	archaeology
la basilica	basilica
il capolavoro	masterpiece
la città	city
la distruzione	destruction
l'eruzione	eruption
il foro	forum
l'imperatore	emperor
la storia	history
il tempio	temple

dove 6 [dove sei]?	where R U [where are you]?
per fortuna	luckily/fortunately
sai	you know
senti	listen
uffa!	how annoying!

poi	then
su	on/about

CAP [Codice di Avviamento Postale]	postcode
d.C. [dopo Cristo]	A.D. [anno Domini]

antico	ancient
corto	short
distrutto	destroyed
mezzo	half
sacro	sacred
stanchissimo	really tired

andare	to go
vedere	to see
visitare	to visit

venti	20
ventuno	21
ventidue	22
ventitré	23
ventiquattro	24
venticinque	25
ventisei	26
ventisette	27
ventotto	28
ventinove	29
trenta	30
trentuno	31
trentadue	32
trentatré	33
trentaquattro	34
trentacinque	35
trentasei	36
trentasette	37
trentotto	38
trentanove	39
quaranta	40
cinquanta	50
sessanta	60
settanta	70
ottanta	80
novanta	90
cento	100

gennaio	January
febbraio	February
marzo	March
aprile	April
maggio	May
giugno	June
luglio	July
agosto	August
settembre	September
ottobre	October
novembre	November
dicembre	December

altro?	something else?
basta	that's it, that's all
basta così?	will that be all? anything else?
quanto è?	how much is it?
uno sconto	a discount
vorrei	I would like
vorresti	you would like

Il concerto rock

In this chapter you will learn:

- to use the verb **essere** to be in the plural
- to use plural nouns
- to use **c'è, ci sono** there is, there are
- to indicate people and things [in places and pictures]
- to order food and drinks
- about a symbol of Italy, the *David*
- about two famous music festivals

Federico is following his dream of becoming a famous singer... and nothing will get in his way! Next, he goes to Florence, where there's an international rock concert being held in the city square, Piazza della Signoria. His biggest fans, Chiara, Marco and Max, have arrived. Will Chiara finally meet up with Federico? Or will he get away again?



puntata sei...

5 Al concerto...

Che folla! Ci sono pochi posti rimasti, Max. Allora, io a sinistra, tu a destra...

...e ci sono molte ragazze carine...

What is the Italian name for Florence?

www.esplora.com.au

Fortel!

Bravo!

Mamma mia, quant'è bravo, Marco.

Chi è questo?

Allora, ragazzi, ci sono notizie di Federico?

Guarda, secondo Fede, tu sei un cantante eccezionale! E questo è da parte sua.

Secondo LUI? Allora Fede è qui! Dov'è?

Ops, Fede non c'è più... adesso.

Scusa tanto, ma ci sono così tante distrazioni qui...

Un messaggio: 'Sei bravo, ok. Ma io di più!'



Riflettiamo

- 1 Do you go to live music concerts? Or would you like to? Describe what you like about these kinds of concerts.
- 2 How do you feel about performing in front of an audience... at a school assembly or any music/drama performance?
- 3 What do you think about talent shows on TV?

siamo pronti? are we ready?
 dentro inside
 un obiettivo an objective
 trovare to find
 in gara competing
 vabbé [slang] OK
 loro they
 sono they are
 questi these
 la mia [f] my
 che folla! what a crowd!
 pochi few
 a sinistra to the left
 a destra to the right
 notizie news
 secondo according to
 da parte sua from him
 strumenti musicali musical
 instruments
 non c'è più he is no
 longer here
 tante many
 distrazioni distractions
 dietro behind, on the back
 di più more

Continua...

vero o falso?

- 1 Il concerto di musica rock è a Milano.
- 2 Solo i cantanti sono ammessi.
- 3 Ci sono cinque guardie.
- 4 Marco è un bravo cantante.

biglietti tickets
 un cantante a singer
 possono [they] can
 entrare enter
 ci sono there are
 posti limitati limited seats
 soluzione solution
 cantare to sing
 bravo [m] good
 una voce a voice
 guardie guards



pratica



Le fotografie di Firenze

Ascolta

Michele is a young singer who's been in the rock concert in Firenze, just like Federico and Marco. Listen to him showing his photos in a Movie Maker presentation.

Allora, questa è la mia *avventura* a Firenze con mia *mamma* e mio papà per il concerto rock.

Qui c'è mia *mamma*, si chiama Vittoria e lei è proprio forte!

Qui c'è mio papà *in stazione*. Qui ci sono molte *persone* e molti *treni*. C'è sempre una *confusione grande*.

In questa *fotografia* c'è la piazza, si chiama Piazza della Signoria.

In questa piazza, c'è una *statua* famosa, il David di Michelangelo. Poi, ci sono anche *altre* statue a Firenze.

Ci sono anche *la fontana* e *il palazzo*.

Qui ci sono *le fotografie* di tanti cantanti: qui c'è Federico, lui è *bravissimo* ma un po' misterioso.

Poi, c'è la mia *amica* Rossana. Lei è simpatica e carina.

Loro sono Marco, Chiara e Max.

Attività

Leggi e trova

Read Michele's presentation again and write down all the expressions using *c'è* and *ci sono*.

Crea

Imagine you've just been on a holiday in Italy. Do a presentation of your holiday using Movie Maker, PowerPoint or photos. Include at least five pictures and use the expressions *c'è* and *ci sono* to describe them.

Trova e leggi

Find some pictures go with the following captions. You could get

pictures from old magazines or print them from the internet. Present the pictures to the class, reading the captions in Italian.

C'è un ragazzo.

Ci sono un ragazzo e una ragazza.

C'è un cantante.

Ci sono tanti cantanti.

C'è mio papà.

Ci sono mamma e papà.

C'è il David.

Ci sono il David e il Palazzo Vecchio.



Dove siete voi qui?

Riflettiamo

- 1 Can you find Firenze on the map of Italy? What region is it in?
- 2 Why is Michelangelo often associated with Firenze? Who is he anyway?

In Italian some names, such as *Michele, Andrea* and *Nicola*, are boys' names even though they don't end in 'o'.

avventura adventure
 mamma mum
 in stazione at the station
 persone people
 treni trains
 una statua a statue
 altre other
 la fontana fountain
 il palazzo palace
 le fotografie photos
 bravissimo [m] very good

Ascolta

As Michele was talking about his photos, his friend Marianna wasn't really listening. But now she's suddenly interested, and she wants to know more.

MARIANNA: Scusa, Michele, dove sei qui?

MICHELE: Qui sono a Firenze, con mamma e papà.

MARIANNA: Dove siete voi tre esattamente?

MICHELE: Allora, qui noi siamo in Piazza della Signoria.

MARIANNA: Chi sono loro due?

MICHELE: Loro sono due ragazzi di Roma.

MARIANNA: Oh, e questa ragazza, chi è?

MICHELE: Lei è Rossana, una ragazza toscana molto carina!

MARIANNA: E lui, chi è?

MICHELE: Lui è Marco, un ragazzo romano.

MARIANNA: Voi due siete amici?

MICHELE: Siamo amici, sì.

Attività

Leggi e trova

Read Michele and Marianna's conversation on this page, and *Puntata sei* on pages 52 and 53 again. While you read these two texts find where the verb **essere** to be was used. Make a list, and see if you can find every time any form of **essere** was used.

Chiedi a coppie

In pairs, look at a magazine or a newspaper and ask about the people in the photos. For example:

Chi è questa ragazza?

Lei è Kylie Minogue.

Chi sono loro?

Loro sono cantanti.

Crea

Create a display of six photos you have taken on different occasions, with friends and family. Present them to the class, answering questions like *dove sei qui? chi sono loro? che cosa c'è qui? dove siete qui? chi è lui? chi è lei?*

immagina che...

scenario

Rossana is a friend of Michele's. Rossana takes an American friend, Paola, to a café in Piazza della Signoria in Firenze. They tell the waiter at the café what they want.



Riflettiamo

Name some Italian cafés or pastry shops in your city. Which Italian desserts and sweets do you like most? Have you ever tried **budino** or **pannacotta**?

ROSSANA: Buongiorno. C'è **un tavolo** per noi? Siamo in due.

CAMERIERE: Sì, ci sono due tavoli **liberi**, a destra o a sinistra.

ROSSANA: A destra, grazie. Che cosa vorresti tu, Paola?

PAOLA: Vorrei **un cappuccino** e **una bibita**, per favore. **Un'aranciata**.

ROSSANA: Mmm, non mi piace il caffè, e non mi piace il tè. Allora, un cappuccino e una bibita **anch'io**.

CAMERIERE: Cappuccini di pomeriggio? Mmm, va bene. Due cappuccini e due bibite... due aranciate, vero?

ROSSANA: Perfetto. Io vorrei anche **un dolce**...

PAOLA: Mmm, anch'io.

CAMERIERE: Va bene, allora due dolci... Che dolci **esattamente**? Ci sono il **budino**, la **torta**, lo **spumone**...

ROSSANA: Ci sono **pasticcini**?

CAMERIERE: No, non ci sono più pasticcini.

ROSSANA: Forse... uno **spumone** allora.

PAOLA: Anch'io. Va bene di pomeriggio, signor cameriere?

CAMERIERE: Va bene, va bene... Allora, due **spumoni**, facile!

Attività

Trova

Find the 10 differences between these pictures. Use *c'è* and *ci sono* to write about the differences.



Attività

Immagina in gruppo

Imagine ordering something in a café in Firenze. In groups, write and perform the conversation you would have in one of these scenarios [one of you is the waiter]:

- the café has run out of *budino* and cakes, they only have gelato
- the waiter offers you a wide choice before you finally decide

Immagina

Imagine you are missing some items you really need: your Italian book, two pens, four pencils, a ruler, five folders, and three textas. Go around the class, and ask classmates if they have what you need. For example:

Hai una penna, per favore?

Sì, ecco. / No, mi dispiace.

Hai due matite, per favore?

Sì, ecco. / No, mi dispiace.



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au

In the afternoon Italians like to go to a local café, called *il bar*, for a drink [hot or cold] and a snack. However, in Italy people don't usually order *cappuccino* or *caffè latte* because these drinks are usually only drunk in the morning.

un tavolo a table
liberi [pl] free
un cappuccino a cappuccino
una bibita a soft drink
un'aranciata an orange soda
anch'io me too
un dolce a dessert
esattamente exactly
il budino pudding
la torta cake
lo spumone mousse
pasticcini small cakes
facile easy

Tutti amano David

Do you know the story of David? It originates in the Old Testament in the Bible, where a brave young boy [called David!] used a rock to kill Goliath, a giant who was terrorising his people. As a reward, David became the second king of Israel.

Between 1501 and 1504 the artist Michelangelo created his marble statue of *David*. He produced it after being asked to create a statue that would symbolise the young, brilliant city of Firenze achieving greatness and power. The people of Firenze were very impressed by Michelangelo's statue, and *David* has become a famous symbol of this city. What's a famous symbol for the city, town or region where you live?



There are many replicas of Michelangelo's *David* around the world. Some can be found in places you wouldn't expect:

- at London's Victoria and Albert Museum
- in a shopping mall in Surfers Paradise, Australia
- in the 'Appian Way Shops' at Caesar's Palace in Las Vegas, USA

David e David

Another statue of David was made by an artist called Donatello. He did this in the years 1430–1440 A.D. – about 60 years before Michelangelo created his *David*! Which *David* do you prefer?



Riflettiamo

Do you think Michelangelo's *David* is a good symbol for Firenze? Do you know any other works of art by Michelangelo? Try to find some images of his works... maybe your class could make a collage of images in the classroom.

Attività

Paragona e presenta

Compare Donatello's and Michelangelo's *David*s. In groups, discuss the differences between the two statues. Discuss materials, colours, accessories, and styles. Share your findings with the class.

esplor

La musica in Italia

Two famous pop song festivals are held in Italy each year.

	Il Festival di Sanremo	Il Festivalbar
Year began:	1951	1964
Months held:	February/March	June till September
Type of music:	Italian light pop	International songs
Place held:	The city of Sanremo [Liguria]	Different cities around Italy
Duration:	5-6 days	Once a week for three months.
How to 'win'	Two winners: VIP and new talent. Voted by the Italian people.	One absolute winner based on record sales.

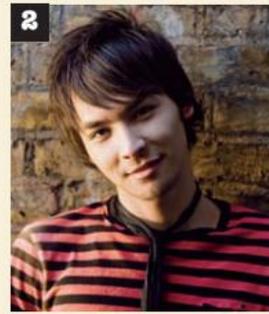
Attività

Leggi e discuti

Read the following profiles of singers. Which music festival do you think they'd like to enter?



1 Ciao, mi chiamo Marco e ho 16 anni. Ho due chitarre elettriche e mi piace la musica rock! La mia band si chiama Musica Ribelle e la mia musica è forte. Le canzoni sono in inglese perché mi piace l'Australia. I ragazzi della band sono Giusi, Beppe e Claudia.



2 Buongiorno, sono Luca e ho 24 anni. Sono di Torino e mi piace solo la musica italiana. Ho una voce molto bella! Non studio l'inglese, perché non mi piace molto.

mag

La rivista

QUIZ

The first one to answer these questions wins the title of *esperto d'italiano*.

- 1** Piazza della Signoria is the main square in:
 - a] Roma
 - b] Milano
 - c] Firenze
- 2** The Cappella Sistina *Sistine Chapel* is in:
 - a] Milano
 - b] il Vaticano
 - c] Firenze
- 3** The leaning tower is in:
 - a] Torino
 - b] Roma
 - c] Pisa
- 4** Michelangelo was originally from:
 - a] Roma, in Lazio
 - b] Arezzo, in Toscana
 - c] Napoli, in Campania
- 5** Firenze is in the Italian region of:
 - a] Veneto
 - b] Toscana
 - c] Lazio

Michelangelo's *David* is a very powerful symbol throughout Italy. Images of *David* are often used in advertisements for things like jeans, insurance companies, and even a brand of *prosciutto*. How do you think Michelangelo would feel about that?

Progetto

Imagine your favourite singer or band is in a music festival in Italy, and they are introducing themselves to the Italian audience. Find a picture of them and add a big speech bubble which includes what they'd say to introduce themselves. [You can use the 'singer profiles' on this page as a model.]

grammatica

Create a jingle or rhyme to remember the combination of vowels to form the plural nouns: *o* → *i*, *a* → *e*, *e* → *i*.

essere [to be]

[io] sono	I am
[tu] sei	you are
[lui/lei] è	he/she is
[Lei] è [fml]	you are
[noi] siamo	we are
[voi] siete [pl]	you are
[loro] sono	they are

Noi siamo a Milano, in Italia.

We are in Milan, in Italy.

Voi siete in Piazza della Signoria a Firenze.

You are in Piazza della Signoria in Florence.

Maria Grazia e Paolo sono in centro a Roma.

Maria Grazia and Paolo are in the CBD in Rome.

there is/there are

To say *there is* you use *c'è*.

C'è Maria?

Is Maria there?

C'è una grande piazza.

There is a big square.

C'è un messaggio per te.

There is a message for you.

To say *there are* you use *ci sono*.

Ci sono due piazze qui.

There are two squares here.

Ci sono tre ragazzi di Milano.

There are three boys from Milan.

Ci sono molti monumenti?

Are there many monuments?

making nouns plural

To make nouns [words for people, animals and objects] plural in Italian, you must change the last letter [-o, -e or -a].

Singular	Plural
masculine	
-o	-i
feminine	
-a	-e
masculine and feminine	
-e	-i

un ragazzo

due ragazzi

un libro

quattro libri

uno studente

dieci studenti

una ragazza

otto ragazze

una scuola

undici scuole

una storia

tante storie

When a noun ends with an accented vowel, as in *caffè*, *tè* and *città*, there is **NO CHANGE** in the plural.

For example:

Non un caffè, ma vorrei due caffè.

Not just one coffee, but I would like two coffees.

Firenze e Milano sono due belle città.

Florence and Milan are two beautiful cities.

talking about plural things

To indicate or present words that are plural, you have to use the plural forms of *questo* *this/these*:

Questi sono Mario e Antonio.

These are Mario and Antonio.

Queste sono Lucia e Anna.

These are Lucia e Anna.

When there are masculine and feminine words together, you must use the masculine plural form.

Questi sono mamma e papà.

These are mum and dad.

Vocabolario

Remember Italian nouns take a gender. They are classified either as masculine [ending in -o or -e] or feminine [ending in -a or -e].

Some nouns, such as *cantante*, can be either masculine or feminine.

[noi] siamo [voi] siete [pl] [loro] sono	we are you are they are	cantante entrata fontana fotografie gara guardia mamma notizie obiettivo palazzo persone soluzione sorpresa statua stazione strumento musicale treno voce	singer entrance fountain photos competition guard mum news objective palace people solution surprise statue station musical instrument train voice
anch'io [io] vorrei [tu] vorresti	me too I would like you would like		
c'è ci sono	there is there are		
queste [f, pl] questi [m, pl]	these these		
di più poche [f, pl] pochi [m, pl] tante [f, pl] tanti [m, pl]	more few few many/a lot of many/a lot of		
aranciata bibita budino cappuccino dolce pasticcino spumone tavolo torta	orange soda soft drink pudding cappuccino dessert small cake mousse table cake		
		cantare entrare trovare	to sing to enter to find
		bravo pronto	good ready
		a destra a sinistra non più vabbé [slang]	to the right to the left no longer OK



Musica o museo?

In this chapter you will learn:

- the verb **avere** to have in the plural form
- to express ages in the plural
- expressions using **avere**
- to describe things in the plural
- to express simple needs
- about the Uffizi Gallery
- about other forms of art in Italy

Chiara and Marco have met up with Laura, who is studying art in Florence. They've managed to find the music shop that was on the card Federico gave Max at the concert. Why did Federico want them to go to the music shop? Let's find out ...

1 A Firenze...



2 Nel negozio di strumenti musicali Dini...



3



4



puntata sette...

5

Uffa! Va beh. Ecco il laptop, ma comunque siete proprio noiosi. Due bambini piccoli.

Oh, mamma mia, che difficile!

6

What is the name of the most famous museum in Florence?

www.esplora.com.au

Ecco il sito di Federico e gli Explora. C'è un invito per i fan.

7

041... Mm, un prefisso telefonico. Di dov'è?

Un altro indizio... non mi dire.

HOME
WS
SIC
DISE
TACT

EXPLORA BLOG

Siete teenager? Questo concerto esclusivo è per voi, under diciotto! Fede e gli Explora. RSVP, telefono: 041-349511

visitiamo we visit
prima first
le chiese the churches
non abbiamo we don't have
tempo time
giovani young
moderni modern
antiquate old-fashioned
non avete due anni you are
not two-year-olds
che piaga! what a pain!
in offerta on sale
convenienti reasonably priced
chitarre guitars
hanno they have
fanno they are doing
da molto tempo for a long
time
mica at all
un invito an invitation
un prefisso telefonico a
telephone area code
un altro indizio another clue
non mi dire don't tell me
abbiamo we have/are
abbiamo sete we're thirsty
abbiamo fame we're hungry
abbiamo sonno we're sleepy
stressante stressful
per carità for goodness' sake

8

Allora, pronti per vedere Firenze?

Senti, abbiamo sete, fame e sonno! E poi, Laura, sei proprio stressante. Vero, Marco?

No comment, per carità.



Riflettiamo

- 1 What do you know about Firenze? Have you ever been, or do you know someone who has been there?
- 2 What's the best monument or museum you've ever been to? Is there a monument or museum you'd really love to visit - in Australia, Italy or somewhere else?

Continua...

Vero o falso?

- 1 Marco e Chiara sono pigri.
- 2 Gli strumenti musicali sono tutti moderni.
- 3 Gli Explora sono tutti bassi, brutti e noiosi.
- 4 Gli Explora fanno un concerto.

pratica



Riflettiamo

Have you put a profile of yourself on an internet site like MySpace or similar sites? What sort of info would you put about yourself? What do you like, or not, about these kinds of internet sites?

I profili video

Ascolta

These video profiles of young musicians have been posted on a website for emerging rock bands.

- 1** *Ciao! Noi siamo gli Explora: noi ci chiamiamo Federico, Paolo, Giulia e Viviana. Siamo ragazzi italiani. Abbiamo quindici anni. Noi siamo tutti belli, intelligenti, forti e un po' famosi. Abbiamo molto talento. Voi avete anche passione per la musica rock? Il prossimo concerto è presto, molto presto. Scrivi il tuo feedback.*
- 2** *Ciao! Siamo Valentino, Giacomo e Samuele, la nostra band si chiama 'Free style'. Il nome è in inglese, ma noi siamo italiani. Valentino è bello, Giacomo è ribelle e Samuele è creativo. Insieme, siamo forti e un po' ribelli.*
- 3** *Salve! Siamo Valeria, Paola e Tiziana, siamo le ragazze di 'Anime Ribelli'. Noi siamo italiane, belle, moderne e forti!! Abbiamo molto talento. Ascolta e scrivi commenti carini a anime.ribelli@rockemergente.it.*
- 4** *Loro si chiamano Gianni e Paola, e sono il duo di 'In&Out'. Gianni e Paola sono belli e innovativi. Gianni e Paola sono italiani. Loro hanno sedici anni. Le musiche sono moderne ma hanno anche ritmi classici. Ecco la foto.*





Attività

Descrivi

Describe these people, using the words and phrases that go with the photos.

Io sono...



italiano, alto, intelligente

Loro sono...



Lei è...

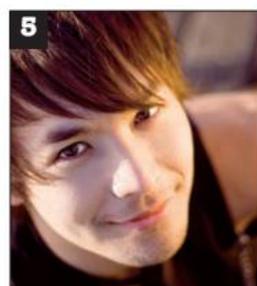


australiano, basso, divertente

Voi siete...



Lui è...



italiano, bello,
interessante

Presenta

Introduce two of your classmates. Say what their names are, how old they are and what they look like. You could use this as a model:

Loro si chiamano Paul e Louise. Hanno tredici anni. Loro sono alti, belli e simpatici.

Crea

Create a profile for a famous celebrity couple. [Write a profile on a poster or in a multimedia report. Include: names, ages, physical descriptions, personality and professions. [Remember, sometimes you'll use plural adjectives and sometimes singular ones... think about when.]

Remember that adjectives in Italian dictionaries always end in *-o* or *-e*. It is up to you to change the endings to match the noun's gender and number [that is if they are singular or plural].

noi ci chiamiamo our names are
abbiamo quindici anni we are fifteen years old
belli [m, pl] beautiful
intelligenti [m, pl] intelligent
forti [m, pl] strong, cool
famosi [m, pl] famous
voi avete [pl] you have
prossimo [m] next
nostra our
italiani [m, pl] Italian
ribelle [m] rebellious
insieme together
ribelli [m, pl] rebellious
italiane [f, pl] Italian
belle [f, pl] beautiful
moderne [f, pl] modern
loro si chiamano their names are
innovativi [m, pl] innovative
loro hanno sedici anni they are sixteen years old
ritmi classici classic rhythms

immagina che...

scenario

Laura is at a supermarket in Florence. Chiara calls her on her mobile to ask for a favour.



LAURA: Pronto?

CHIARA: Ciao, Laura, dove sei?

LAURA: In un supermercato a Firenze. Perché?

CHIARA: Perché vorrei una cosa o due...

LAURA: Non va bene, Chiara, ho fretta e ho poco tempo.

CHIARA: Per favore, hai un momento? Allora, io e Marco abbiamo fame e sete.

LAURA: Tu e Marco avete fame e sete... o solo tu, Chiara hai fame e sete?

CHIARA: Per favore, Laura, sei noiosa! Vorrei due panini grandi, due cornetti e due bibite fresche, perché ho caldo... e Marco ha caldo anche, naturalmente.

LAURA: Naturalmente! Calma, e i soldi? Ho bisogno di tanti euro per una spesa così grande...

CHIARA: Scusami, Laura, abbiamo bisogno di un piccolo prestito, anche. Non abbiamo tanti soldi.

LAURA: Va bene. Sono una cugina brava, troppo brava.

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD



↑ cornetto



↓ panino



Attività

Trova e scrivi

Have a look again at **Puntata sette** on pages 62 and 63, and the **Scenario** on page 66. Find all the expressions that use parts of the verb **avere to have** and write a list. Compare your list with those of your classmates. Did you find them all?

Taglia e scrivi

Cut out pictures from magazines or brochures that could illustrate expressions using parts of the verb **avere**. Label them in Italian.

Look again at the verb **avere to have** and practise saying it in class. Remember, in Italian the letter **h** is silent, so you don't pronounce it.



(Lei) ha fame.

Ha bisogno di pasta.

ristorante esplora

Leggi e scegli

Read these lists and choose the items you would need in these situations:

per la scuola ho bisogno di ...

per una gita ho bisogno di ...

per una festa di compleanno ho bisogno di ...

CD di musica
due penne
tre matite
un regalo
un cappello grande
un invito
una crema solare
una macchina fotografica
una torta
uno snack
uno zaino

Attività

Immagina

Imagine calling to ask a friend to buy something for you. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have in one of these scenarios:

- you need something for school and you do not have enough money
- you need something for a party and your best friend owes you money
- you need to borrow something from your friend for an excursion, but your friend is angry with you

perché? why?
una cosa one thing
ho fretta I'm in a hurry
poco tempo little time
un momento a moment
panini bread rolls
cornetti croissants
bibite fresche cool drinks
ho caldo I'm hot
calma calm down
i soldi money
ho bisogno di I need
una spesa a purchase
abbiamo bisogno di we need
un prestito a loan



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au



La Galleria degli Uffizi

One of the biggest tourist attractions in Firenze is *La Galleria degli Uffizi*. This gallery has an amazing collection of paintings and sculptures from the 14th century through to the Renaissance [the 15th and 16th centuries]... so, how old are these artworks now?

The Uffizi has works of art by Italian artists such as Michelangelo, Leonardo da Vinci, Caravaggio and Botticelli. There are also works by other European artists like Rembrandt and Rubens. Have you seen artwork by any of these artists?

Attività

Immagina

Search *la Galleria degli Uffizi* the *Uffizi Gallery* on the internet and try to find:

- directions to the Uffizi when you are in Firenze
- the address
- the opening and closing hours
- the cost of tickets
- special deals for schools
- facilities for people with a disability

On some websites you can take a virtual tour of the Uffizi. See if you can find rooms 10–14. Who are these rooms dedicated to?

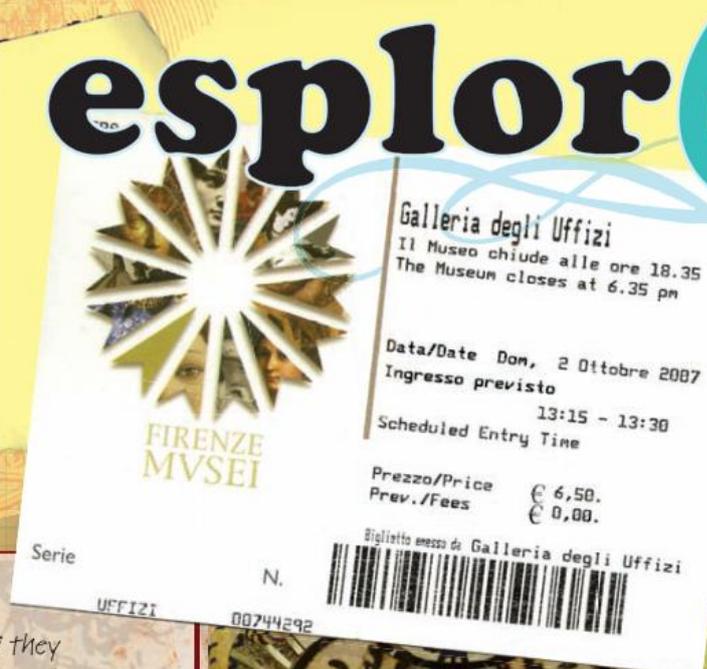


Riflettiamo

- 1 If you went to **la Galleria degli Uffizi** what would you like to see?
- 2 Have you been to art exhibitions or galleries? Where? What do you think about visiting such places? What's good and bad about it?

When people go to *la Galleria degli Uffizi* they might notice some artworks missing! But it's not because they've been stolen... *La Galleria degli Uffizi* has such a special collection that they often lend pieces to other galleries for temporary exhibitions all over the world. Have you ever seen artwork that's been borrowed from a gallery or museum in Italy, or from another country?

esplor@





Riflettiamo

- 1 Why do you think it is cities in the north of Italy that hold ice sculpture competitions?
- 2 English speakers often use 'foreign' languages for the names of things so they will sound trendy. Does this happen in your country? Can you think of any examples – especially names for food, shops, fashion items etc.?

Su e Giù



Su: La Galleria degli Uffizi is visited by more than one million visitors every year!



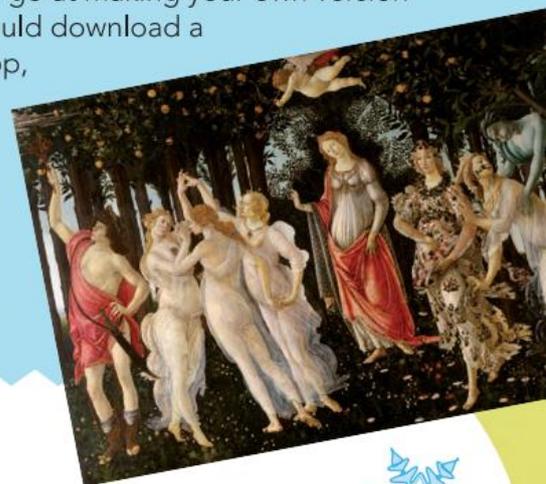
Giù: In 1993, Italian terrorists exploded a bomb in the centre of Firenze. Six people were killed, and a section of the Uffizi was badly damaged.



['La Primavera']

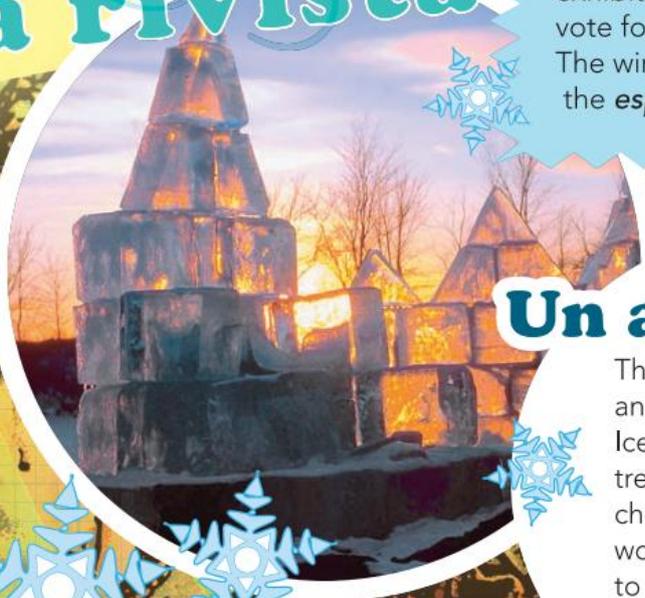
Look at this painting called *La primavera Springtime* by Botticelli. It is often used as a symbol of Italy, and is reproduced on all sorts of things, such as Laura's shirt in *Puntata sette*.

Get creative and have a go at making your own version of *La primavera*. You could download a copy, and use Photoshop, Illustrator or just paper with paints or crayons. Hold an exhibition in class and vote for the best one. The winner will be the *esperto d'italiano!*



@mag

La rivista



Un altro tipo d'arte

There's another 'very cool!' art competition held at an Italian ski resort every year. It's called the 'Art in Ice' competition [it has an English name to sound trendy!]. Every year, the ski resort town of Livigno chooses 10 teams of three artists to compete. They work with three-metre blocks of compressed snow to create their masterpieces in ice.

Progetto

Create a sculpture out of plasticine or any material you want. Imagine it is an ice sculpture, and you are competing in the annual 'Art in Ice' competition in Livigno. Present your sculpture with an 'object report' that includes its name, a description and what inspired you.

grammatica

plural adjectives

As you learned in *Capitolo tre*, adjectives in Italian must 'agree' with the nouns they describe. This means they must 'match' in both gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural). The endings of the adjectives change according to the gender and number of the noun they describe.

To become plural these are the changes that are made:

Singular	Plural
masculine bello	belli
feminine bella	belle
masculine and feminine interessante	interessanti

Look at these examples and notice the noun being described as well as the ending of the adjective.

I libri sono belli.
The books are beautiful.

Ho amici belli.
I have beautiful friends.

Le ragazze sono belle.
The girls are beautiful.

Abbiamo ragazze belle in classe.
We have beautiful girls in class.

Hai libri interessanti.
You have interesting books.

Lei ha storie interessanti.
She has interesting stories.

avere [to have]

[io] ho	<i>I have</i>
[tu] hai	<i>you have</i>
[lui/lei] ha	<i>he/she has</i>
[Lei] ha [fml]	<i>you have</i>
[noi] abbiamo	<i>we have</i>
[voi] avete [pl]	<i>you have</i>
[loro] hanno	<i>they have</i>

personal information in the plural

To say the name of other people, you can use the verb *chiamarsi* in a plural form:

[noi] ci chiamiamo	<i>our names are...</i>
[voi] vi chiamate	<i>your names are...</i>
[loro] si chiamano	<i>their names are...</i>

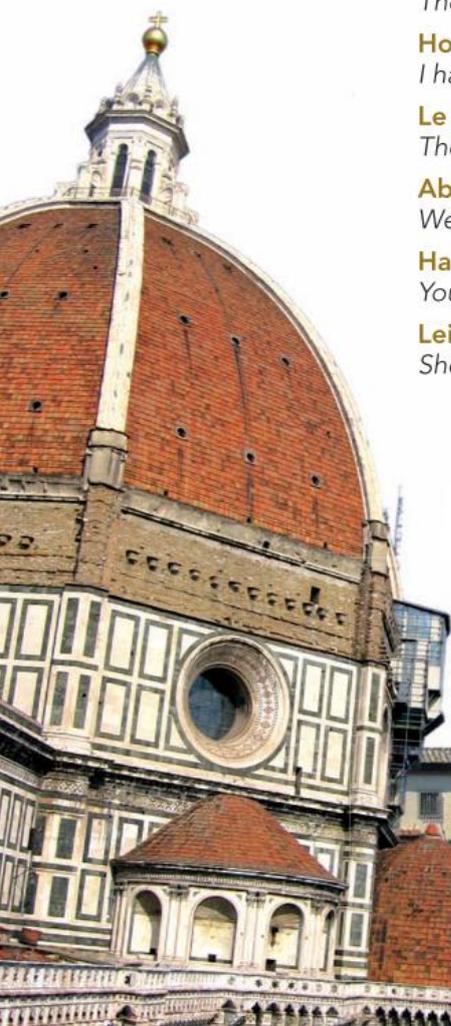
To ask and tell the age of other people, you use:

quanti anni avete?	<i>how old are you?</i>
abbiamo... anni	<i>we are... years old</i>
quanti anno hanno?	<i>how old are they?</i>
hanno... anni	<i>they are... years old</i>

expressions using avere

The verb *avere* in Italian can be used with lots of different expressions. They are often quite different from English. Here are some common ones:

avere caldo	<i>to be hot</i>
avere freddo	<i>to be cold</i>
avere fame	<i>to be hungry</i>
avere sete	<i>to be thirsty</i>
avere fretta	<i>to be in a hurry</i>
avere sonno	<i>to be sleepy</i>
avere bisogno di...	<i>to need...</i>



Vocabolario

To use the correct adjective when describing nouns [people, animals or things], it may help to ask yourself:

- is the noun I am describing **masculine or feminine**? [Check the ending or the dictionary if you're not sure.]
- is the noun **singular or plural**? [Check the ending. Are you talking about more than one person or thing?]

[noi] abbiamo [voi] avete [loro] hanno	we have you have they have	bibita chiesa chitarra cornetto cosa duomo indizio invito panino prefisso telefonico prestito soldi spesa tempo	soft drink church guitar croissant thing cathedral clue invitation bread roll telephone area code loan money purchase time
[noi] abbiamo... anni [voi] avete... anni [pl] [loro] hanno... quanti anni avete? [pl] quanti anno hanno?	we are... years old you are... years old they are... years old how old are you? how old are they?	come da molto tempo in offerta insieme mica prima	like for a long time on sale together at all first
avere bisogno di avere caldo avere fame avere freddo avere fretta avere sete avere sonno	to need to be hot to be hungry to be cold to be in a hurry to be thirsty to be sleepy	calma non mi dire per carità perché? poco tempo un momento	calm down don't tell me for goodness sake why? little time a moment
[noi] ci chiamiamo [voi] vi chiamate [loro] si chiamano	our names are your names are their names are	antiquato bello conveniente famoso forte giovane innovativo intelligente moderno prossimo ribelle stressante	old-fashioned beautiful reasonably priced famous strong, cool young innovative intelligent modern next rebellious stressful



La festa in maschera

In this chapter you will learn:

- to use the plural definite articles **i, le, gli**
- to say the days of the week
- to tell the time
- to write simple invitations
- about the **Carnevale** in Venice
- about international time zones

The next stop is Venice, the romantic city in the northeast of Italy. Marco and Chiara have found out about a masquerade party in Venice [where everyone will be wearing masks!]. The Explora band will also be at the party. Will they finally find Federico? Time is running out...

1 A Venezia, in piazza...

Allora, Che ore sono? Le 9.00! Guarda, gli invitati sono tutti eleganti! Ecco i nostri biglietti.

Le maschere e i costumi sono bellissimi, vero?



2

VENEZIA-BENVENUTI

Ecco le nostre maschere ...Dai! Sono le 9.15., Chiara, è tardi. Andiamo!

Andiamo.



3 Alla festa in maschera...

Ecco i gruppi musicali in concerto. Ecco gli Explora alle... 9.00! Oh no, accidenti... siamo in ritardo.

Non mi dire. In più, con tutte queste maschere e i costumi è proprio difficile riconoscere le persone.



4

Più tardi...

Buonasera, signorina. Vuole ballare un valzer?

Mmm, va beh. Solo uno, però.

Sono le 11:00, poco tempo per trovare Fede.



...puntata otto...



What's the Italian name for the city where the party is held?



www.esplora.com.au

5



Bella la musica, no?

Accidenti, quant'è romantico, con gli occhi verdi, bellissimi.

6



È mezzanotte! È tardi. Scusa, ma devo andare ...

Tardi? Andare dove? Sono solo le 24:00. La festa non è ancora finita...

7



Arrivederci, Chiara... Sei carina. Ma io devo andare...

Ma tu non sei... forse... Sì! FEDERICO! ASPETTA...

8



Guarda, il telefonino di Fede... sono proprio stupida vero?

Sempre e solo Federico. Povera Chiara ... e povero me ... !

Ma no! Dai!

Continua...

che ore sono? what time is it?
 sono le 9:00 it's nine o'clock
 gli invitati guests tutti [m] all [of them]
 i nostri our le maschere masks
 i costumi costumes sono le 9:15 it's 9.15
 è tardi it's late andiamo! let's go!
 i gruppi musicali music bands in ritardo late
 tutte [f, pl] all proprio really riconoscere to recognise
 vuole ballare? [fml] would you like to dance?
 un valzer a waltz però though, however
 sono le 11:00 it's 11:00 poco tempo little time
 trovare to find gli occhi verdi green eyes
 è mezzanotte it's midnight devo I must
 sono solo le 24:00 it's only midnight
 aspetta wait proprio stupida [f] really stupid
 sempre e solo always and only povera [f] poor

Vero o falso?

- 1 Sono le sette.
- 2 I costumi e le maschere sono brutti.
- 3 È troppo tardi per il concerto di Explora.
- 4 Il ragazzo in maschera è Fede.

Riflettiamo

What do you know about Venezia? Have you, or someone you know, ever been there?



pratica

Tanti inviti

Ascolta

Listen to these people reading out invitations they have just received.



Ti piace il carnevale? Ti piace la musica? Ti piace festeggiare sempre, **lunedì, martedì, mercoledì, giovedì, venerdì, sabato e domenica?**

Tutto è pronto per gli invitati: i costumi, i regali, gli spettacoli, gli amici, le maschere, le torte, le persone... E le sorprese, anche!

Data: il 10 ottobre, sabato

Ora: 18.00

Da: Lucia e Manuele

Indirizzo: Via dei Carantani 11, Varese.

Telefono: 0339-7899233.

Indirizzo e-mail: lucia&manuele@libero.it

RSVP entro il 28 settembre. Ci vediamo!

Abbiamo bisogno di una festa di classe!

I professori sono troppo severi. Le feste di classe sono le occasioni speciali per gli studenti. Gli studenti hanno il **potere** per un giorno.



Dove: Liceo linguistico 'Dante Alighieri'
Quando: 10 ottobre, ore 20.30
RSVP entro il 2 ottobre



Ti piace La Ferrari?

Messaggio per i tifosi. È ora di festeggiare insieme. Gli incontri per vedere il Gran Premio di Monza sono da Danilo, il sette, l'otto e il nove settembre, ore 13:00, naturalmente! 53 giri e molti chilometri di passione a Monza.



Attività

It's a good idea to revise the definite articles *il, lo, la*. Have a look again at *Grammatica in Capitolo cinque* on pages 50 and 51.

Scrivi

Write the plural form of these words:

<i>il ragazzo</i>	<i>la ragazza</i>	<i>il bambino</i>	<i>la bambina</i>
<i>lo studente</i>	<i>la studentessa</i>		

Scrivi e cambia

Read through the invitations on page 74 and write down all the plural nouns you can find. Then change them all into singular nouns [with the definite articles!]. Remember, nouns are people, animals or things.

Leggi e competi

Read *Puntata otto* on pages 72 & 73 and try to find all the plural nouns [with their articles]. Have a competition to change them into singular nouns... with the correct article, of course! See who can get the most right!

Che ore sono?

Ascolta

Listen to the speaker saying these times in Italian:



è l'una



è mezzanotte



è mezzogiorno



sono le due



sono le tre e un quarto



sono le tre e mezza
sono le tre e mezzo

Attività

Di'

Say these times:

1:00 a.m.	3:00 a.m.	6:00 a.m.	10:00 a.m.
2:00 p.m.	7:00 p.m.	10:00 p.m.	12:00 p.m.

Immagina

Imagine you are planning a party for your Italian friends. Design an invitation. You can use a computer program or just poster paper. Choose one of these scenarios:

- your own birthday party with lots of good food, music and games
- a fancy dress party
- a surprise party for your best friend



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au

festeggiare to celebrate
lunedì Monday
martedì Tuesday
mercoledì Wednesday
giovedì Thursday
venerdì Friday
sabato Saturday
domenica Sunday
pronto ready
i regali gifts
gli spettacoli shows
da at [someone's place]
indirizzo address
via street
entro by
i professori teachers
severi [p] strict
potere power
liceo linguistico secondary
school focusing on
languages
quando when
i tifosi supporters
gli incontri meetings
il Gran Premio the Grand Prix
naturalmente of course
giri laps

immagina che...

scenario

Giulio always has trouble making decisions. Now he's been invited to two parties on the same day... and he can't make up his mind. Should he go to the masquerade party in Venice, or to his friend Lucia's birthday party? **Giulietta**, his sister, tries to help him out.



GIULIO: Accidenti, ho due feste in un giorno.

GIULIETTA: **A che ora è** la festa in maschera a Venezia?

GIULIO: È alle otto e cinquanta di sera.

GIULIETTA: Mmm, **alle nove meno dieci**. E la festa di compleanno di Lucia, a che ora è?

GIULIO: È alle nove e quaranta.

GIULIETTA: Mmm, **alle dieci meno venti**. Allora? Che problema c'è?

GIULIO: Ho due feste in una sera!

GIULIETTA: Che cosa ti piace di più?

GIULIO: La festa in maschera a Venezia è **il mio sogno**, ma Lucia è un'amica importante.

GIULIETTA: **Chiama Lucia** e di' la situazione.

GIULIO: Che ora è adesso? Hai l'orologio?

GIULIETTA: Sono le undici e quaranta.

GIULIO: Le undici e quaranta? È molto tardi, accidenti. **Chiamo Lucia** domani!

GIULIETTA: Bravo.

Check out the video on the *Esplora!* DVD





Che ore sono?

Ascolta

Listen to the speaker saying these times in Italian:



sono le sette
meno un quarto



sono le sette
meno dieci



sono le sette
meno cinque

To say times after the hour you use *e* and with the number of minutes past the hour. To say times before the hour you use *meno* minus the hour.

Attività

Di'

Say these times in Italian:

5:50 a.m. 8:45 a.m. 6:55 p.m. 9:50 p.m. 11:40 p.m.

Controlla e scrivi

Check your timetable, and write when you have an Italian class:

Lunedì, abbiamo italiano alle dieci e quarantacinque.

Martedì non abbiamo italiano.

Mercoledì abbiamo italiano alle...

Chiedi

Ask the times of TV programs. Use a page from a TV guide and take turns to ask, for example:

A che ora è 'Home and Away'?

È alle diciotto e trenta.

a che ora è...? at what time is...?

alle otto e cinquanta di sera at eight fifty in the evening
alle nove meno dieci at ten to nine

alle nove e quaranta at nine forty

alle dieci meno venti at twenty to ten

il mio sogno my dream
chiama call

di' tell

l'orologio watch

chiamo I'll call

Il fuso orario

Time zones, **il fuso orario**, have been devised to keep time schedules around the world. The times are based on the sun rising at different times in different parts of the world. Each time zone is part of a circle with **i poli** the poles at either end.

The time zones start at 0° longitude in a city called Greenwich in England. Then the zones move to the west from Greenwich [towards America]. As the time zone moves west, you subtract hours from Greenwich time. If you move to the east [towards Australia] you add hours.

Fatti

The time difference between Italy and Australia's east coast depends on the time of the year because both countries have daylight savings during Summer.

- From October to March, there is a 10-hour difference due to Australia [except Queensland] having daylight saving.
- There is an eight-hour difference from March to October, when Italy applies its own daylight-saving time, called *ora legale*.
- For information on international time zones go to: www.24timezones.com.



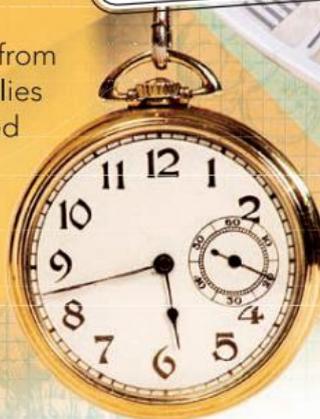
Riflettiamo

Do you have family or friends who live in another city or country in a different time zone to you? Find out what the time is now in these cities: Rome, Jakarta, Beijing, New York, San Francisco, London. Think of a few other cities, and check their time.

Attività

Rispondi

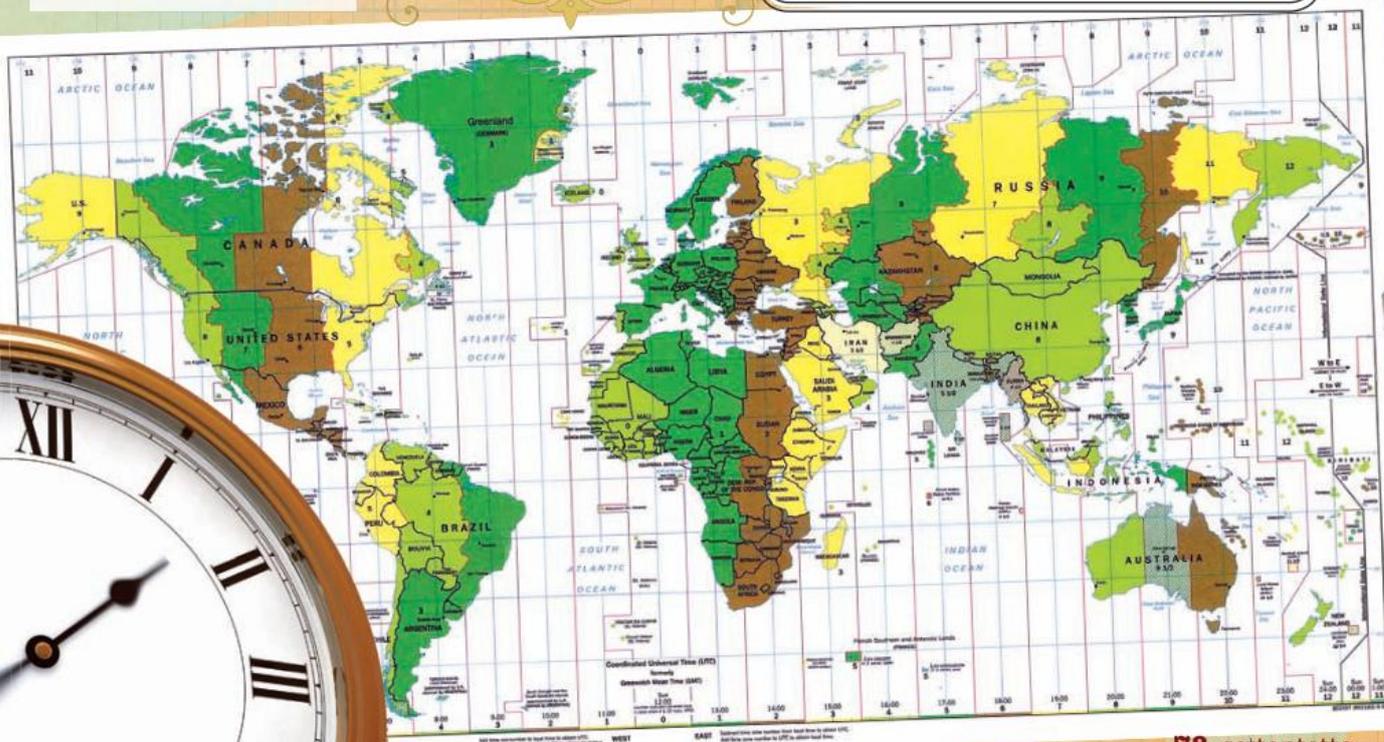
What time is it in Italy right now? How many hours' difference are there between Italy and your city/town?



esplor

Attività

Put two clocks up in your Italian classroom. One showing local time, and the other showing the time in Italy.



Which is the first city to celebrate New Year's Day every year? Look at an atlas and organise the following cities in order of time zones from first to last. You could start by finding Greenwich, in England, and then move east or west, depending on whether you prefer to add or subtract! The first person to put them in the correct order will be the **esperto d'italiano**.

- Rome
- Melbourne
- Perth
- Christchurch
- New York
- Tokyo
- London
- Buenos Aires

@mag

La rivista

Che ore sono?

In Italy all churches have beautiful bell towers that ring every hour, half-hour or, in some cases, every quarter hour! In some small towns and villages, people rely on these bronze bells to know the time. Most churches now have modern bell systems, with recorded melodies programmed by computers. However, many smaller bell towers are still operated by hand. The tradition of playing bells is very old, and you have to learn the technique... it is not as easy as it looks!

Il Carnevale di Venezia

Wearing costumes and masks is a tradition during **Carnevale** all over Italy. **Carnevale** is the final celebration before Lent, when Christians prepare for Easter. During Lent Catholics used to give up eating meat on Fridays, but nowadays they are encouraged to do more, like limiting their use of modern luxuries [TV, computer, internet, mobile phone] and donating to charity.

In Venezia the **Carnevale** is an ancient festival that goes back many centuries to the time when the city was an independent trading empire. Venezia used to be a commercial link between Asia and Europe.

Attività

Trova e presenta in gruppo

In groups, research and present the history of **Carnevale** in Venezia. Find out why people wear masks, and what else happens during **Carnevale**. See who can find the most beautiful mask... have a vote! Search for images using the words **Carnevale di Venezia**.



Riflettiamo

Why do you think Venezia used to be a commercial link between Asia and Europe?

Progetto

Create a multimedia presentation or a project about the bell tower of San Marco in Venezia. You can research it on the internet or in books on Venezia.

grammatica

plural of 'the'

Definite articles follow a pattern when they change from singular to plural.

Singular	Plural
----------	--------

masculine

il	i
lo	gli
l'	gli

Singular	Plural
----------	--------

feminine

la	le
l'	le

il libro
the book

il nome
the name

lo studente
the student

l'amico
the friend

la mamma
the mum

la classe
the class

l'amica
the friend

i libri
the books

i nomi
the names

gli studenti
the students

gli amici
the friends

le mamme
the mums

le classi
the classes

le amiche
the friends

what's the time?

To ask the time you use **Che ora è?** or **Che ore sono?**

To answer you use **è** for **l'una/one o'clock**, **mezzogiorno/midday** and **mezzanotte/midnight** or **sono le** for plural numbers from **due** to **ventiquattro**.

è mezzogiorno.
it is midday/noon.

è l'una.
it is one o'clock.

sono le tre.
it is three o'clock.

è mezzanotte.
it is midnight.

sono le due.
it is two o'clock.

For times past the hour **e** is used:

sono le due e venti.
it's 2:20

sono le sei e quaranta.
it's 6:40

sono le due e quarantacinque.
it's 2:45

Meno is used to express before or to the hour:

sono le due meno venti.
it's twenty to two [1:40]

sono le sette meno dieci.
it's ten to seven [6:50]

Un quarto a quarter can replace **quindici** fifteen to express to and past:

sono le tre meno un quarto.
it's a quarter to three

sono le sei e un quarto.
it's a quarter past six

sono le sei e quindici.
it's 6:15

Mezzo/mezza half can replace **trenta** thirty both **mezzo** or **mezza** can be used:

sono le quattro e mezza/mezzo.
it's half past four

sono le quattro e trenta.
it's 4:30

a.m./p.m.

The expressions **a.m.** and **p.m.** are not used in Italian.

To talk about times in the morning you use:

di mattina
in the morning

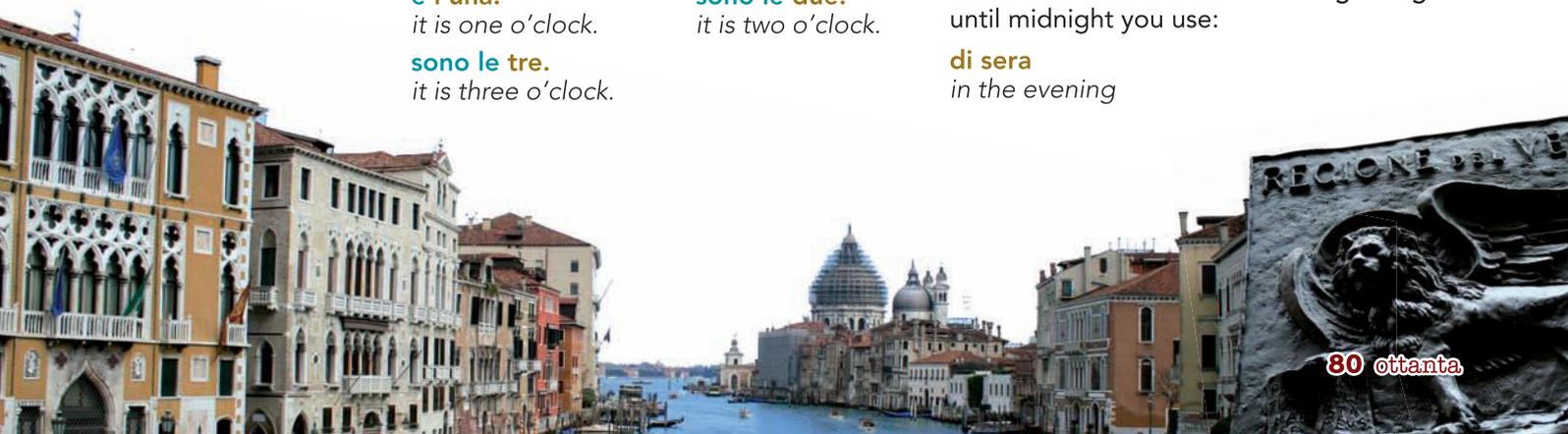
To talk about times in the afternoon [before 5.00 p.m.] you use:

di pomeriggio
12:00 noon to 5:00 p.m.

To talk about times in the evening or night until midnight you use:

di sera
in the evening

In Italian, **the** is used more often than in English. For example, **the** is used after **like**: I like **pizza** in Italian is **Mi piace la pizza.**



Feminine nouns and adjectives which end in *-ca* add an *h* to form the plural, becoming *-che*. This keeps the hard *k* sound. For example: *l'amica* becomes *le amiche*, *simpatica* becomes *simpatiche* and *atletica* becomes *atletiche*.

To talk about times at night from midnight to early morning you use:

di notte
at night

24-hour clock

In Italy, as in most of Europe, the 24-hour clock is often used. This is especially the case in official timetables, at schools, stations, airports, and for TV and radio programs. So, after 12:00 p.m., *le dodici*, you continue counting until you reach 24:00, *le ventiquattro*.

sono le tredici
it's 1:00 p.m. [13:00]

sono le diciasette e trenta
it's 5:30 p.m. [17:30]

at what time?

To ask at what time something is, you use: *a che ora è...?*

To answer, you use *alle ...*
[a + le at + the = alle]

A che ora è la partita?
At what time is the match?

È alle nove di sera.
It's at nine [o'clock] in the evening.

È alle 21:00.
It's at 9:00 p.m.

Vocabolario

i [m, pl]	the [before words beginning with a consonant]	gruppo musicale	music band
gli [m, pl]	the [before words beginning with vowels, z or s + consonant]	incontro	meeting
le [pl, f]	the [before feminine]	invitato	guest
		maschera	mask
		orologio	watch/clock
		regalo	gift
		sorpresa	surprise
		spettacolo	show
		tifoso	supporter
		torta	cake
		valzer	waltz
alle dieci meno venti	at twenty to ten	chiama!	call!
alle nove e quaranta	at nine forty	chiamo	I [will] call
alle nove meno dieci	at ten to nine	devo	I must
alle otto e cinquanta	at eight fifty in the evening	festeggiare	to celebrate
di sera			
a che ora è...?	at what time is...?	un giorno	a day
che ora è?	what time is it?	lunedì	Monday
che ore sono?	what time is it?	martedì	Tuesday
mezzanotte	midnight	mercoledì	Wednesday
quando?	when?	giovedì	Thursday
sono le 11:00	it's 11:00	venerdì	Friday
sono le 24:00	it's midnight	sabato	Saturday
sono le 9:15	it's 9:15	domenica	Sunday
andiamo	let's go	da	at [someone's place]
aspetta	wait	entro	by
è tardi	it's late	indirizzo	address
in ritardo	late	via	street
naturalmente	of course		
tutte [f, pl]	all		
tutti [m, pl]	all [of them]		
costume	costume		
Gran Premio	Grand Prix		

La gita in vaporetto



In this chapter you will learn:

- to say what you like and dislike
- to say how much you like something
- to ask for prices
- to negotiate and bargain when you go shopping
- about Murano glass

The masquerade party didn't end up as Chiara had hoped. Federico has taken off again, and all she's left with is his mobile phone! The next day Laura suggests they take a ferry to the island of Torcello and stop off at Murano and Burano for some shopping – that should cheer Chiara up! But the question is... where will Federico turn up next?

1 Alla fermata del vaporetto a Venezia ...



2 Dopo, sul vaporetto...



3 Più tardi, in viaggio...



4 Più tardi, sull'isola di Torcello ...



puntata nove...

Spell out the number of the Torcello island ferry

www.esplora.com.au

5 Al Ponte del Diavolo...



Oh, non mi piacciono i gatti! E dove sono i negozi?!?

No, non ci sono negozi, ma ci sono la chiesa e i mosaici da visitare.



Oh no, non mi piacciono le chiese. Mi piace di più lo shopping!!

Che sorpresa!

7 Più tardi...

Senti senti, il telefonino di Fede... un MMS.

Un video messaggio! Forte. Da chi è? Fede?

Si parla del diavolo! Non mi piace Federico... Non mi piacciono i ragazzi così misteriosi.



Ciao, come va? Dove sei? C'è un concorso musicale per la TV. Ti piace l'idea? Interessato? O ti piacciono di più le ragazze australiane, adesso? OK, ci vediamo!

Continua...



Riflettiamo

Have you ever travelled by ferry? Or by gondola? Is there something similar in your city or country?
 Do you use video messages with your friends? What does MMS stand for?

fermata stop
 vaporetto ferry
 quanto costa? how much
 does it cost?
 l'isola island
 costa it costs
 ti piacciono [pl] you like
 il vetro artistico glass art
 i vasi vases
 gli anelli rings
 i braccialetti bracelets
 i pendenti pendants
 le statuette figurines
 gli orologi watches
 gli oggetti objects
 costano [pl] they cost
 è iniziata it started
 il Ponte del Diavolo
 the Bridge of the Devil
 povera [f] poor
 che nebbia! how foggy!
 i negozi shops
 mosaici mosaics
 si parla del diavolo!
 speak of the devil!
 un concorso competition
 adesso now

Vero o falso?

- 1 Torcello è un'isola di Venezia.
- 2 Il biglietto per l'isola di Torcello costa nove euro.
- 3 L'isola di Murano è famosa per il vetro artistico.
- 4 Arriva un SMS da Federico per Marco.

pratica

In vetreria

Ascolta

Listen to Chiara in a glassware shop in Murano. She wants to buy some jewellery to wear when she next sees Federico. The **venditore** helps her choose something.

CHIARA: Buongiorno, signore.

VENDITORE: Buongiorno.

CHIARA: Vorrei **comprare un gioiello**.

VENDITORE: Va bene, ho tanti gioielli bellissimi. Ti piacciono i **braccialetti**?

CHIARA: No, non mi piacciono i braccialetti **di vetro**.

VENDITORE: Ti piacciono **gli anelli**, allora?

CHIARA: Sì, mi piacciono tanto! Ho molti anelli, ma non ho anelli di vetro! Quanto costano?

VENDITORE: Gli anelli costano **da €29 a €50**.

CHIARA: Accidenti, costano tanto.

VENDITORE: Ti piacciono **le collane** o **le spille**?

CHIARA: No, non mi piacciono.

VENDITORE: Allora, ho un anello in **offerta**. Ti piace questo?

CHIARA: Sì, mi piace. Quanto costa?

VENDITORE: Costa €22, in offerta. Va bene?

CHIARA: Perfetto, eccellente! Ecco €22.



For more expressions visit www.esplora.com.au



Riflettiamo

- 1 What products is your country famous for?
- 2 What products do you think make good souvenirs for visitors to your city or country?



bellissimo.



i braccialetti
da €43



i pendenti
da €24



gli anelli
da €30



le collane
da €20



gli orecchini
da €17



i vasi
da €52

MURANO GLASS

le statuette
da €36



venditore salesperson
 comprare to buy
 un gioiello a piece of
 jewellery
 i braccialetti bracelets
 di vetro [made] of glass
 gli anelli rings
 da... a... from... to...
 le collane necklaces
 le spille brooches
 in offerta on sale

Attività

Trova e di'

Find the meaning of these nouns in *Puntata nove* on pages 82 and 83 and in Chiara's conversation in the glassware shop. Then say these words again in the plural. Remember to include the plural definite article *i, le* or *gli*.

<i>l'anello</i>	<i>l'orecchino</i>	<i>la gondola</i>
<i>il braccialetto</i>	<i>il vaso</i>	<i>il gioiello</i>
<i>la collana</i>	<i>l'oggetto</i>	<i>il pendente</i>

Chiedi e rispondi

In pairs, ask and answer questions about the glassware and jewellery in the brochure. Use the sample as a model.

Ti piacciono i braccialetti gialli e blu?

Sì, mi piacciono. Quanto costano?

Costano da €43.

Visita e presenta

Visit the website of a Murano glass shop – search for the words *Murano glass island* or *Murano island in Venice*. Then create a multimedia presentation or poster of your favourite items. Include prices and descriptions in Italian.

Attività

Immagina

Imagine being at a glassware shop in Murano. You want to buy souvenirs for your best friend and your Italian teacher. In pairs, write and act out the conversation you would have with the salesperson in one of these situations:

- you don't like vases or figurines but the salesperson tries to sell them to you
- your budget is limited to €45

Crea

Create a video advertisement in Italian for two [or more] products from your city or country. Include descriptions and prices.

immagina che...

scenario

Marco's not interested in buying glassware... he's found an electronics shop!



MARCO: Mi scusi, vorrei comprare un regalo.

VENDITORE: Va bene. Che cosa? Abbiamo molti prodotti: le macchine fotografiche digitali, le webcam, i computer, i laptop, i CD di musica, i DVD...

MARCO: Mmm, quanto costa questo MP3?

VENDITORE: Costa circa €80.

MARCO: Che cosa? Secondo me, costa troppo.

VENDITORE: Mi dispiace, ma è di ultima generazione.

MARCO: È possibile avere uno sconto?

VENDITORE: Non è possibile.

MARCO: Accidenti, è molto bello. Quanto costano questi CD di musica rock?

VENDITORE: Costano poco, da €15 a €25. Sono in offerta.

MARCO: Poco? Per me costano tanto.

VENDITORE: I DVD costano poco, da €10 a €15. Va bene?

MARCO: No, non mi piacciono questi film.

VENDITORE: Allora, ascolta, questo memory stick costa €23. È abbastanza conveniente.

MARCO: È possibile avere uno sconto?

VENDITORE: Va bene: €15. €8 di sconto! Va bene?

MARCO: Grazie mille!

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD





Riflettiamo

- 1 Do you get pocket money? Can you spend it however you want? What do you have to do to earn your pocket money?
- 2 What countries use the **euro**? Research on the internet and find out how much your pocket money would be in **euro**.

The **euro** € is the currency that's been used in Italy since the year 2000. In Italian, each separate vowel is pronounced clearly, and you have to roll the r. The **euro** does not change in the plural, so you pay **un euro** and **due euro** etc.

un regalo gift
 molti prodotti a lot of products
 le macchine fotografiche digitali digital cameras
 circa about
 secondo me according to me
 troppo too much
 di ultima generazione latest generation
 è possibile? is it possible?
 uno sconto a discount
 molto very
 poco little
 per me to me
 tanto a lot
 allora well, then
 abbastanza fairly
 conveniente reasonably priced

Attività

Trova e di'

Give your opinion of how much these items would usually cost:

l'MP3	il memory stick	il laptop computer
il CD di musica	la webcam	la videocamera
la macchina fotografica digitale		il telefonino

Use *circa* about/around and *da... a...* from... to...

Un MP3 costa da 80 dollari a 300 dollari.

Secondo me, costa troppo./Secondo me, va bene.

Di'

Say what you think about:

Chiara	Marco	Laura	Max	Federico
Pompeii	il David	l'isola di Murano	la musica rock	

Include the words:

molto	poco	abbastanza	troppo	tanto
-------	------	------------	--------	-------

Follow this sample as your model:

Secondo me, Chiara è molto simpatica.

Per me, Chiara è troppo noiosa.

Immagina

Imagine you are in Italy and want to buy a present for someone back home. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have when buying a gift for the following people:

- your best friend who likes glassware, you have only €30
- your Italian teacher, before he/she writes the end of year school reports



Commedia dell'Arte

Commedia dell'arte is a kind of spoken drama that has a long history in Italy. It was very popular in the 16th and 17th centuries. The actors wear masks and costumes to represent a variety of extremes of good and bad characteristics. The plays are very funny, and because there are no scripts the actors improvise as they go along. The original actors of the *commedia dell'arte* were the first professional actors in Europe. The most common *commedia dell'arte* topics are:

- being tricked in love
- clever tricks to get money
- tricks to outwit gullible people
- cases of mistaken identity
- disasters like fires and shipwrecks

Some of the most famous characters are:

- *Arlecchino* the naughty servant
- *Pantalone* the stingy shopkeeper
- *Dottore* the absent-minded philosopher
- *Capitano* the boasting officer

Il riciclaggio

Recycling is an important issue in Europe. Italy recycles about 20% of its total waste every year, but Austria is the best recycler in the European Union. Austrians recycle 65%! Do you think Australia can match that?

Su e Giù



Su: In some Italian cities *il riciclaggio* recycling is taken very seriously. If people do not separate their rubbish into the right bins they can be heavily fined.



Giù: In 1976 a chemical reactor exploded in the city of Seveso, near Milano. The explosion produced a toxic cloud, and in a few hours thousands of animals and trees died. No human deaths were reported, but many of the 17,000 inhabitants of Seveso became very sick.

I simboli di Venezia

These are all symbols of Venezia. Which one do you like best? Which one is the most popular in your class? Do a quick survey!

- Piazza San Marco
- Basilica di San Marco
- the gondola
- Murano glass
- *Carnevale* and its masks

Attività

Lavora in gruppo

In groups, visit www.murrina.info. Choose a glass product, and present it in class in Italian, using PowerPoint, or make a poster.

Have a look at these sites for a fantastic 360° panorama of Piazza San Marco in Venezia:

- www.bella-italia.com
- www.italyguides.it

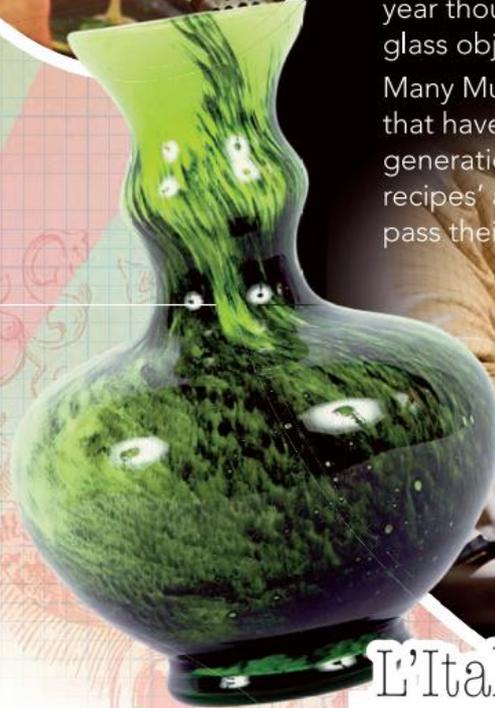
You can move around and it feels like you are there!

esplor



Riflettiamo

What do you think about recycling? Is it important? What do you recycle? What about your family, your school and your community?



Arte in vetro

The Island of Murano is also known as the *glass island* because it is so famous for its glass art. Every year thousands of tourists visit Murano to see the glass objects being made, and to buy them!

Many Murano glass artists are practising techniques that have been handed down from generation to generation. Often their techniques are like 'secret recipes' and they are very careful about who they pass their secrets on to!



@mag

La rivista

QUIZ

Complete the following quiz. Do you remember where you can find these items? Match them with the correct Italian city. The first to finish correctly wins the **esperto d'italiano** badge.

- 1 gondola
- 2 la Galleria degli Uffizi
- 3 the catacombs
- 4 Fiumicino Airport

L'Italia in Europa

Italy is part of the European Union, or EU. The Treaty of Rome [1957], was the first step towards creating the EU. Initially, there were six EU member nations: Italy, Belgium, France, Germany, Luxembourg and the Netherlands. In 2007 there were 27 European nations in the EU.

The euro € became the only currency used in 13 EU countries in 2002.

All euro notes are the same for all member countries. The coins, however, have some differences. All the coins are the same on one side [which shows the value/amount], but on the other side there's a national emblem for the country of origin. However, you can use any of the euro coins in any of the EU countries that use the euro!



Progetto

Create a multimedia presentation or poster project about the euro in Italy. Find images [on the internet and/or other reference material], exchange rates for your country's currency, and include a simple description. You can find euro images at:

www.europa.eu
www.nonsoloscuola.org/euro1.htm





grammatica

I like... you like...

In Italian there are two ways to say *I like*:

Mi piace... **Mi piacciono...**

The one you use depends on whether what you like is singular or plural. If the thing you like is singular you use **mi piace**. If what you like is plural you use **mi piacciono**.

mi piace la ragazza
I like the girl

mi piacciono le ragazze
I like the girls

mi piace il libro
I like the book

mi piacciono i libri
I like the books

This is the same when you are talking about what you don't like:

non mi piace il libro.
I don't like the book.

non mi piacciono i libri.
I don't like the books.

The pattern is the same for *you like*:

ti piace... for singular things
ti piacciono... for plural things

ti piace la scuola
you like school

ti piacciono le materie
you like the subjects

non ti piace il libro
you don't like the book

non ti piacciono i libri
you don't like the books

When you want to say that you *like doing something* [using a verb] you use the singular forms **mi piace** or **ti piace**.

mi piace mangiare
I like eating

non mi piace studiare
I don't like studying

ti piace mangiare?
do you like eating?

ti piace studiare?
do you like studying?

adverbs of quantity

These adverbs don't change when used in front of an adjective:

poco	little
tanto	much/a lot
parecchio	a lot/heaps
abbastanza	enough
troppo	too much

troppo belli so beautiful
or after a verb:
mangio poco I eat just a little.

how much is it?

In Italian, to ask *How much is it?* you can use:

quanto è?
how much is it?

quanto costa?
how much does it cost?

quanto costano?
how much do they cost?

To answer, you use:

costa...
it costs...

costano...
they cost...

Vocabolario

Try to use *mi piace* or *mi piacciono* when expressing whether you and your friends like something or not. It will help you to remember, and your non-Italian speaking friends or family won't know what you're talking about! Use these expressions when talking, and in text messages, emails and notes.

l'anello il biglietto il braccialetto la collana il concorso il gioiello l'isola l'oggetto l'orecchino il pendente il regalo la spilla il vaporetto il vaso il venditore il vetro artistico	ring ticket bracelet necklace competition piece of jewellery island object earring pendant gift brooch ferry vase salesperson glass art	tanto troppo	much/a lot too much
		adesso allora forse ma perchè però	now well, then maybe but because though/however
		da... a... per	from... to... for
		conveniente di ultima generazione di vetro in offerta	reasonably priced the latest generation [made] of glass on sale
		costa... costano... quanto costa? quanto costano? [pl]	it costs... they cost... how much does it cost? how much do they cost?
		secondo me vorrei comprare	according to me I would like to buy
		è iniziata è possibile in generale non è possibile va bene / non va bene vale molto	is started it is possible generally it's not possible it is OK/it's not OK it's worth a lot
		arrivare comprare costare fare shopping visitare	to arrive/to get to to buy to cost to go shopping to visit
		mi piacciono ti piacciono	I like you like
molti prodotti gli anelli i braccialetti le collane le macchine fotografiche digitali i mosaici gli oggetti gli orecchini gli orologi i pendenti le spille le statuette i vasi	a lot of products rings bracelets necklaces digital cameras mosaics objects earrings watches pendants brooches figurines vases		
abbastanza circa di più molto parecchio poco povera proprio	fairly, enough about/around more very a lot/heaps little poor just		



Viaggio in treno



In this chapter you will learn:

- to say what you and others do
- to say what someone else likes or doesn't like
- to exchange information about family and friends
- to exchange personal information
- about public transport in Italy

puntata dieci...

Chiara and Marco are taking the train to their next destination. When you're on a train you can often meet new and exciting people!

2

Buongiorno! lo mi chiamo Chiara e questo è Marco. lo sono australiana, sai.

Ehi, ciao ragazzi! lo mi chiamo Guglielmo. E voi?

Senti senti, quanto le piace parlare!

1

Mi piace viaggiare in treno, e anche ascoltare il mio MP3, riflettere... Ma soprattutto, guardare dal finestrino e vedere così tanta gente!

Personalmente, in treno mi piace leggere il giornale in pace...

3

Eccezionale, l'Australia, che storia! Dove abiti? A Sidney?

No! Abito a Melbourne, e adesso giro l'Italia, la mia terra d'origine. Mi piace viaggiare.

4

Mamma mia, parli italiano molto bene, Chiara. Il tuo amico, parla inglese?

Ma va! Marco è italianissimo di Roma! Non parla inglese con me, è pigro.

Pigro io? Senti chi parla!

Gli piace cantare in inglese, però, ed è abbastanza bravo...



5
Ehi, io canto **BENISSIMO!**
Sono napoletano e noi napoletani **amiamo** cantare!
Ma **tu studi** qui, o viaggi e basta?

Adesso sono in vacanza: **viaggio** e incontro tanta gente...



6
Io sono in **servizio militare** adesso e visito molti posti anch'io! Ehi, Chiara, io parlo un pò inglese:
GOODA BYE
MISSA I AM A SEE
U LETTER...

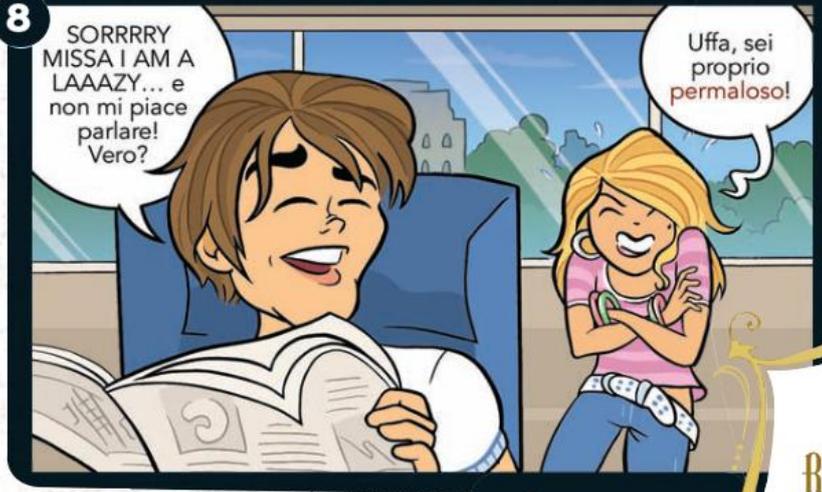
Ohhhh, bella **pronuncia...**
mmmm....

Che **pronuncia!** lo sono più bravo, eh!



7 Più tardi...
Questo articolo di giornale è interessante!
ECCO dov'è Fedè!
Finalmente!

Veramente? Dai, dove è?



8
SORRRRY
MISSA I AM A LAAAZY... e non mi piace parlare!
Vero?

Uffa, sei proprio **permaloso!**

viaggiare to travel
ascoltare to listen
riflettere to reflect
guardare dal finestrino to look out the window
leggere il giornale to read the newspaper
in pace in peace
giro I go around
terra d'origine homeland
parla he speaks
pigro lazy
gli piace he likes
amiamo we love
tu studi you study
viaggi you travel
viaggio I travel
incontro I meet
servizio militare military service
pronuncia pronunciation
permaloso touchy



Riflettiamo

- 1 When do you use public transport? Have you ever travelled a long way by train?
- 2 Have you ever met someone new when you were on a train, especially if you were on holidays somewhere?

Continua...

Vero o falso?

- 1 Secondo Chiara, viaggiare in treno è bello.
- 2 Le piace veramente parlare.
- 3 Marco parla bene francese.
- 4 Il giornale non è interessante.

pratica



Intervista alla radio

Ascolta

Federico is being interviewed on radio about his band, his family and friends.

DJ: Buongiorno, qui DJ Volpe. Oggi ho in studio Federico Mai e gli Explora. Domani, Fede **partecipa** a uno spettacolo televisivo *Idolo italiano*. Allora, il background di Federico: ha 15 anni, abita e **studia** a Roma, **suona** la chitarra elettrica e classica, **gli piace suonare** anche la batteria. Fede **canta** molto bene, gli piace **cantare** e **scrivere** in inglese. Lui **scrive** i testi di Explora. Gli piace **viaggiare**: Federico **viaggia** in tutta Italia e partecipa a tanti concerti e audizioni. Ecco Fede. Allora, Fede, come stai?

FEDERICO: Benissimo, Volpe! Mi piace sempre ascoltare la radio e partecipare, anche.

DJ: Dove studi Federico?

Federico: Studio a Roma, in un liceo.

DJ: Ti piace studiare?

FEDERICO: Così così. Mi piace studiare inglese.

DJ: Studi anche musica?

FEDERICO: Il mio professore di musica è bravissimo.

DJ: Prendi voti belli, vero?

FEDERICO: No comment! Prendere voti a scuola non è la mia passione!

Attività

Trova e scrivi

Find all the verbs used in *Puntata dieci* on pages 92 and 93, as well as in Federico's interview on this page. Write all the verbs down and see who in your class finds them all.

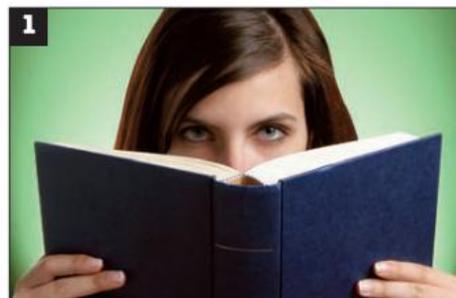
Rispondi

Answer these questions about yourself.

- Parli italiano?
- Ascolti la radio?
- Suoni la chitarra?
- Scrivi un diario?
- Prendi voti belli a scuola?

Scrivi

Write what these people are doing.



Riflettiamo

What changes are made to English infinitive verbs when you talk about someone doing an action? Think about the difference between **do** and **does**, which come from the infinitive **to do**, **live** and **lives** from the infinitive **to live**... why are these different forms used?

Attività

There are three families of verbs in Italian. The infinitives of most Italian verbs end in *-are*, *-ere* or *-ire*. The infinitive is the basic part of the verb, meaning to [verb] in English. For example, *scrivere* to write, *abitare* to live, *dormire* to sleep.

Chiedi e rispondi

Go around the class, and when the teacher says stop, turn to the closest student and ask questions about what they like or don't like doing. Try to use as many as you can of verbs below.

studiare musica

cantare

viaggiare in treno

prendere un cappuccino di mattino

ascoltare l'MP3 in autobus

parlare italiano a casa

suonare la chitarra

scrivere un diario privato

abitare in centro

Ti piace studiare?

Sì, studio matematica e italiano. / No, non studio molto.

Un'intervista a uno studente

Listen to a teacher interviewing a student who wants to be an exchange student in Italy.

PROF: Come ti chiami?

STUDENTE: Mi chiamo Matteo.

PROF: Dove abiti?

STUDENTE: Abito a Melbourne in Australia.

PROF: Quanti anni hai?

STUDENTE: Ho sedici anni.

PROF: Dove studi?

STUDENTE: Studio in un liceo.

PROF: Che cosa studi?

STUDENTE: Studio inglese, matematica, storia.

PROF: Che lingue parli?

STUDENTE: Parlo inglese e italiano un po'.

PROF: Quando parli italiano?

STUDENTE: Parlo italiano a scuola e con il mio papà.

PROF: Che cosa ti piace mangiare?

STUDENTE: Mangio tutto: italiano, inglese, indiano!

PROF: Quanto spendi ogni giorno?

STUDENTE: Mmm, non spendo molto.

Attività

Immagina, rispondi e crea

Imagine you are the exchange student in the interview above. Answer the teacher's questions about yourself.

Immagina

Imagine you are interviewing a character from the *esplora!* cartoon stories. Create a list of six questions you would like to ask. In pairs, write and perform your 'interview'. You could record your interview, play it to the class, and see if they can guess who you are interviewing [skip the 'name' question, of course!]

partecipa he is participating
uno spettacolo televisivo
a TV show

idolo idol

studia he studies

suona he plays [an
instrument]

gli piace he likes

suonare to play [an
instrument]

la batteria drums

canta he sings

cantare to sing

scrivere to write

scrive he writes

i testi lyrics

viaggiare to travel

viaggia he is travelling

un liceo a [specialised] high
school

studiare to study

studi you study

prendi you get

voti marks

prendere to get



immagina che...

scenario

Mike is an exchange student from Sydney. Next year he is going to stay with Max, and go to school with him in Rome. Max uses Skype to call Mike to talk about his family, and show him some photos.

Video



MAX: Ciao Michael, sono Max, il fratello italiano. Come stai?

MIKE: Ciao Max! Sto bene. Per gli amici, mi chiamo Mike!

MAX: Forte! Mike, ecco la mia famiglia. Vedi bene le immagini?

MIKE: Sì, vedo benissimo, Max.

MAX: Allora, questa è mia mamma: si chiama Giada, ha 45 anni, è vecchia... scherzo! Le piace cucinare e di solito cucina romana. Ti piace mangiare italiano?

MIKE: Mi piace la cucina italiana! Mangio sempre italiano.

MAX: Benissimo! Poi, questo è mio papà, lui è forte! Gli piace giocare a calcio, e gioca tutti i giorni. Giochi a calcio, Mike?

MIKE: Sono australiano, mi piacciono tutti gli sport, mi piace nuotare, giocare a 'football' e a tennis. Hai fratelli o sorelle?

MAX: Ho una sorella, si chiama Elisabetta. È molto noiosa. Le piace ballare e le piacciono i vestiti.

MIKE: Wow, cool! È molto carina...

MAX: Ei, attenzione ... è mia sorella... Non le piacciono i ragazzi presuntuosi...

MIKE: Ok. Scusa!

MAX: Ecco mio zio Arturo e mia zia Inga. Questo è mio cugino Guglielmo. Gli piacciono i tatuaggi e ha sempre un nuovo piercing. Questa è mia cugina Anna. Le piace viaggiare e le piacciono i paesi orientali.

MIKE: Anna, viaggia molto?

MAX: Sì, lei abita in Svizzera, ma viaggia spesso. Perché?

MIKE: Perché è molto carina...

MAX: Mike, tu sei peggio di me per le ragazze.



Attività

It's a good idea to record your family presentations from the *Immagina* activity on this page. Then you can watch them later and admire how much you can say!

fratello brother
 vedi you see
 vedo I see
 mia mamma my mum
 scherzo! I'm kidding!
 le piace she likes
 cucinare to cook
 cucina she cooks
 mangiare to eat
 la cucina italiana Italian
 cooking cuisine
 mangio I eat
 mio papà my dad
 gli piace he likes
 giocare to play
 gioca he plays
 giochi you play
 tutti gli sport all sports
 nuotare to swim
 fratelli brothers
 sorelle sisters
 una sorella a sister
 ballare to dance
 le piacciono [pl] she likes
 i vestiti clothes
 presuntuosi presumptuous
 mio zio my uncle
 mia zia my aunt
 mio cugino [m] my cousin
 tatuaggi tattoos
 sempre always
 mia cugina my cousin
 i paesi orientali Asian
 countries
 peggio di worse than

Trova

Find where the verb *piacere* to like [including the conjugated parts *piace/piacciono*] are used in *Puntata dieci* on pages 92 and 93. Also look in Max's Skype conversation on page 96.

Ascolta e ripeti

Listen to Max and Mike's Skype conversation again, and repeat the sentences that contain the verb *piacere*. To pronounce *piace/piacciono* correctly, you should stress the first *a*, and use the soft *ch* sound like in *chat* and *chook*!

Immagina

Imagine you are making a video to introduce your family to some Italian friends. Include each family member's name, age, a description, something they like or dislike, and something they usually do. Present your videoscript to the class.

Immagina

Imagine you are having a Skype conversation with a friend in Italy. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have in these situations:

- exchanging information with Marco about your friends
- exchanging information with Laura about your families



Riflettiamo

Have you ever used Skype? Do you think it is a good way to communicate?

Check out the video on the *Esplora!* DVD





Sì, viaggiare!

If you want to make the most of your holiday in Italy, the best way to visit the most famous 'boot' in the world [look at the shape of Italy!] is to use public transport. The national rail system, *le Ferrovie dello Stato*, goes all over the country. There's a special train called the *Eurostar* which connects the major cities and runs express through small towns. It is stylish and super fast – up to 300 kilometres per hour! This saves heaps of time travelling between cities, and you don't have to worry about the traffic!

esplor@

Trasporto pubblico

Su e Giù

Su: In Italy, secondary school students travel to school by train or bus. On their way to school they have fun with their friends, even playing cards and games! Kids who live in big cities also often ride Vespas or bikes to schools.

Giù: Some young people draw graffiti on trains while the train is waiting at the platform. It's a dangerous thing to do – some have been hit by a passing train!



Riflettiamo

- What transport in your country is similar to the Italian **metropolitana**? Can you think of other famous underground train systems in the world?
- How do you travel to school? What do you usually do on the way to school?



Public transport *trasporto pubblico* in Italy varies depending on the size of the city or town. There are usually buses *gli autobus* everywhere. But trams *i tram* are only found in big cities. In some big cities there's also *la metropolitana* underground railway. The largest *metropolitana* in Italy is in Milano. People using *la metropolitana* can be very impatient. They get cross if you are not quick and don't follow the 'rules' – like you must wait for people to get off before you get on the train!



Attività

Lavora in gruppo e immagina

Working in groups create an ad for a 'restaurant tram' that will tour your city and offer Italian food and entertainment. Decide on colours, style [inside and out!], where it will go, and the menu. Also include an Italian name and a slogan for your restaurant tram. Present the poster in class. Use expressions like:

Si chiama...

È [grande, lungo, rosso, verde...]

Il menu è...

L'itinerario è...

Tu [parli, mangi, vedi...]

Che traffico!

Traffic jams in Italy, especially in big cities at peak hour, can be really boring and even dangerous. There are strict rules about speed, obeying traffic lights and wearing seat belts. If you are caught breaking the rules there are heavy fines.

When you are fourteen years old you are allowed to ride a motor scooter [like a Vespa] in Italy. But before you take off on your scooter you need a **patentino junior licence**. At sixteen you can get a licence to ride a bigger motorbike [up to 125 cc.]. When you're 18 you can get your **patente** licence to drive a car. All of these licences require you to pass a test first, of course!

Once you get to Venezia there are only two ways to get around -- by foot, or on the water. There are water taxis or waterbuses, both called **vaporetti**, or of course, the famous **gondole**, but these are usually used by tourists to see the sights!

@ mag

La rivista

QUIZ

Can you tell the meaning of these expressions by the way they sound? They are all about travelling by train. To win the badge of **esperto d'italiano** you have to work out the English meaning [by making a good guess!] and write at least three full sentences about yourself, starting with:

in treno io...

...arrivare a destinazione

...fare fotografie

...leggere il giornale

...scrivere cartoline e SMS

...ascoltare la musica

...parlare con persone nuove

Progetto

Imagine you are travelling on the Eurostar train to Rome and you meet a really interesting Italian boy or girl [take your pick!] You really want to get to know him/her, so start up a conversation to find out more about each other. You could include your name, age, where you live, likes, dislikes, where and what you study, what languages you speak, and questions about your family. Do this **progetto** in pairs and perform it in front of the class.

grammatica

infinitive verbs

In vocabulary lists and dictionaries verbs are usually listed in the 'basic' form called the infinitive. In English, the infinitive means *to...*, for example, *to do*, *to go*, *to eat*, *to be* etc. In Italian most infinitives end in *-are*, *-ere* or *-ire*. The first part of the infinitive is called the stem. So the infinitive is made up of a stem + ending.

parlare	to speak
prendere	to take
partire	to leave

-are and -ere verbs in the singular

Whenever you use a verb with a subject [the person or thing *doing* the action of the verb] you need to conjugate it. That is, you need to change the ending. [It is the same in English, when we say *he plays* not just *he play*.]

To conjugate a verb in Italian, you need to add the appropriate ending to the stem. [Remember to first take off the infinitive ending *-are* or *-ere*].

Verb endings change according to the subject [the person or thing *doing* the action of the verb].

parlare [infinitive]	to speak
[io] parlo	I speak
[tu] parli	you speak
[lui/lei] parla	he/she speaks
[Lei] parla [fml]	you speak
prendere [infinitive]	to take
[io] prendo	I take
[tu] prendi	you take
[lui/lei] prende	he/she takes
[Lei] prende [fml]	you take

In Italian you do not always need to use the personal pronouns *io*, *tu*, *lui*, *lei* or *Lei* because the verb endings already tell us who is doing the action.

You might have noticed that Italian has only one form of present tense, while English has three forms! So, for example:

[io] parlo	means	I speak
		I do speak
		I am speaking

The English meaning you use depends on what fits best in the situation – don't worry, you'll always know what sounds good in English!

interrogatives ... asking questions

You can use 'question words' to make questions:

chi?	who?
che cosa?	what?
dove?	where?
come?	how?
quando?	when?
perché?	why?
quanto?	how much?
quanti?	how many?

When you ask questions in Italian, you don't need any words like *do*, *does* or *did* like in English.

Dove abita Paolo?
Where *does* Paul live?

Quando mangia Chiara?
When *does* Chiara eat?

You can also leave out the subject pronouns **io**, **tu**, **lui**, **lei**, **noi**, **voi**, **loro**.

Chi è?
Who *is* he/she?

Come stai?
How *are* you?

Che [cosa] studi?
What *do* you study?

Perché studia italiano? [fml]
Why *are* you studying italian?

like and don't like

To talk about what someone likes or dislikes you use:

gli piace/gli piacciono
he likes

le piace/le piacciono
she likes

To say someone doesn't like something you include **non**.

non le piace
non mi piacciono etc.



In Italian, some verbs are classified as **irregular**. Irregular verbs don't follow a pattern like the **-are**, **-ire** and **-ere** verbs. [English also has irregular verbs, for example, **I am, you are, he is ...** all from the verb **to be**]. Because they follow no pattern, you just have to learn the correct part to go with each pronoun for these verbs. You already know two irregular verbs in Italian: **essere to be**, and **avere to have**.

The **cosa** can become just **che** or **cosa** when speaking informally. For example, to ask **What do you study?** You could say:
Che cosa studi?
 OR
Che studi?
 OR
Cosa studi?

The pattern of use is the same as **mi piace/mi piacciono**, it depends on whether the thing liked is singular or plural.
 You use the singular form **piace** with verbs.

Gli piace mangiare la pizza.
 He likes eating pizza.
Le piace giocare a tennis.
 She likes playing tennis.

Vocabolario

ascoltare	to listen	gli piacciono [pl]	he likes
ballare	to dance	gli piace	he likes
cantare	to sing	le piacciono [pl]	she likes
cucinare	to cook	le piace	she likes
giocare a	to play [a sport]		
guardare	to look		
leggere	to read		
mangiare	to eat		
nuotare	to swim		
parlare	to speak		
partecipare	to participate		
prendere	to get, to take		
riflettere	to reflect		
scrivere	to write		
studiare	to study		
suonare	to play [an instrument]		
viaggiare	to travel		
		permaloso	touchy
		pigro	lazy
		batteria	drums
		liceo	[specialised] high school
		spettacolo televisivo	TV show
		terra d'origine	hometown
		testi	lyrics
		voti	marks
		cugina [f]	cousin
		cugino [m]	cousin
		fratelli	brothers
		fratello	brother
		mamma	mum
		papà	dad
		sorella	sister
		sorelle	sisters
		zia	aunt
		zio	uncle
		mia [f]	my
		mio [m]	my
		che cosa?	what?
		chi?	who?
		come?	how?
		dove?	where?
		perché?	why?
		quando?	when?
		quanti?	how many?
		quanto?	how much?
incontro	I meet		
mangio	I eat		
vedo	I see		
viaggio	I travel		
giochi	you play		
prendi	you take		
studi	you study		
vedi	you see		
viaggi	you travel		
canta	he/she sings		
cucina	he/she cooks		
gioca	he/she plays		
parla	he/she speaks		
partecipa	he/she participates		
scrive	he/she writes		
studia	he/she studies		
suona	he/she plays		
viaggia	he/she travels		

MALPENSA SHUTTLE tel. 02.58.58.31.85
 servizio informazioni automatiche
 automatic information service

AIR PULLMAN S.p.A. - GALLARATE
 Telefono 02.58.58.32.02 - P. IVA 00216510123

101 centouno servizio pubblico di linea con autobus, corsa semplice
AEROPORTO MALPENSA
MILANO O VICEVERSA
 corsa nel prezzo del biglietto



L'avventura a Milano



In this chapter you will learn:

- to talk about what people usually do
- to talk about what people are doing in the near future
- to write emails
- to use the verb **andare** to go
- to invite people to events
- to accept or decline invitations
- about the city of Milan

Fede is in the glamorous city of Milan to audition for a new music TV show. Will Marco and Chiara be able to find Fede in this crowded city? Laura and Max could help, but they have other plans. Don't get too hooked on the glitz of Milan because it might soon be time to move on...

1 In Piazza Duomo...



2



3



4



puntata undici...

What is the name of the special focaccia you can eat in Milan?

www.esplora.com.au

5

Andiamo! Corriamo!

Dai! Il pullman va veloce! Ha una scritta: prossime audizioni a...

Che cosa? Andare... correre... ma dove? Insomma! Usate la testa voi due, per una volta!

6

Dove andate? Fermi! Chiediamo informazioni prima, OK?

Troppo tardi! Dove vanno? Guarda come corrono...

Dove prendono tutta l'energia?

7

Correte, ragazzi, dai! Andiamo!

Correre, io? No, mi dispiace! Io non corro dietro a un pullman... come una disperata!

Io sì che corro, ma a mangiare.

8

Tutto OK, Chiara? Vado troppo veloce?

No, vai tranquillo. Leggi l'indicazione, presto!

PROSSIME AUDIZIONI A COMO

Continua...

eccoci here we are
qualcuno someone
vede see
che nervi! I'm fed up!
vado I go
chiedere to ask
vai you go
perdiamo we lose
controlliamo let's check
in metropolitana on the
metropolitan (underground
train)
non mangiate mai [pl]? do you
never eat?
pensano they think
Fede di qui, Fede di là Fede
here, Fede there, Fede
everywhere
il pullman bus
parte (it) is leaving
vanno they are going
tutti everybody
corriamo let's run
che cosa? what?
correre (to) run
usate la testa [pl] use your head
per una volta for once
andate [pl] you are going
fermi stop
chiediamo let's ask
corrono they run
prendono they get
correte [pl] you run
io non corro I'm not running
veloce fast
vai tranquillo! don't worry!

Vero o falso?

- 1 I ragazzi vedono Federico in Piazza Duomo a Milano.
- 2 Laura ha fame.
- 3 Il pullman va veloce.
- 4 Laura e Max non vanno con Marco e Chiara dietro al pullman.

Riflettiamo

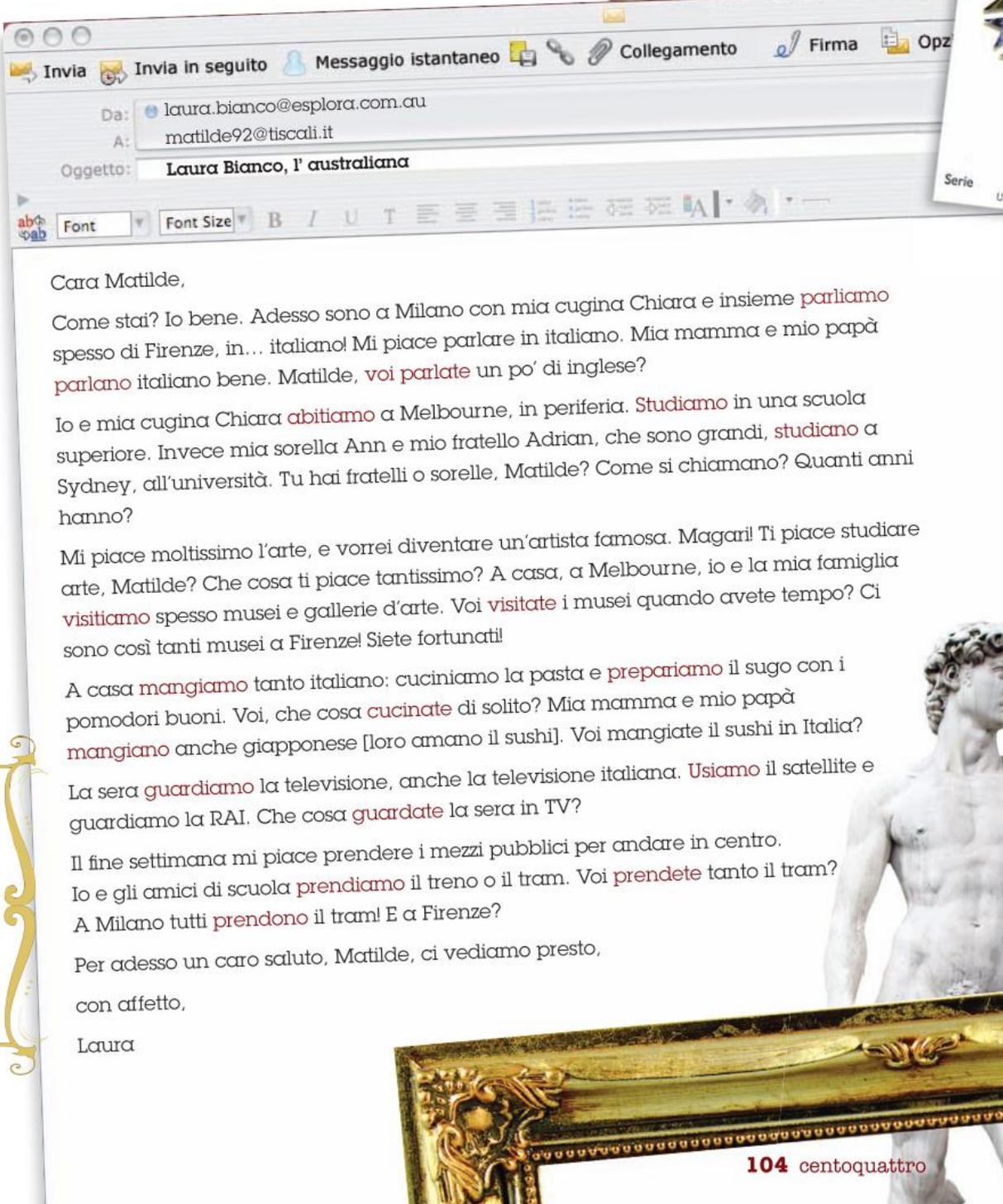
What impression do you get of **Milano** from the **Puntata**? What do you know about **Milano**?

pratica

Un'e-mail per la nuova amica

Ascolta

Laura is going to stay in *Firenze* for a few months to study art. Listen to her reading out her email to her host family in *Firenze*.



Invia  Invia in seguito  Messaggio istantaneo  Collegamento  Firma  Opz

Da:  laura.bianco@esplora.com.au
 A: matilde92@tiscali.it
 Oggetto: **Laura Bianco, l'australiana**

Font  Font Size  B / U T 

Cara Matilde,
 Come stai? Io bene. Adesso sono a Milano con mia cugina Chiara e insieme **parliamo** spesso di Firenze, in... italiano! Mi piace parlare in italiano. Mia mamma e mio papà **parlano** italiano bene. Matilde, **voi parlate** un po' di inglese?
 Io e mia cugina Chiara **abitiamo** a Melbourne, in periferia. **Studiamo** in una scuola superiore. Invece mia sorella Ann e mio fratello Adrian, che sono grandi, **studiano** a Sydney, all'università. Tu hai fratelli o sorelle, Matilde? Come si chiamano? Quanti anni hanno?
 Mi piace moltissimo l'arte, e vorrei diventare un'artista famosa. Magari! Ti piace studiare arte, Matilde? Che cosa ti piace tantissimo? A casa, a Melbourne, io e la mia famiglia **visitiamo** spesso musei e gallerie d'arte. Voi **visitare** i musei quando avete tempo? Ci sono così tanti musei a Firenze! Siete fortunati!
 A casa **mangiamo** tanto italiano: cuciniamo la pasta e **prepariamo** il sugo con i pomodori buoni. Voi, che cosa **cucinate** di solito? Mia mamma e mio papà **mangiano** anche giapponese [loro amano il sushi]. Voi mangiate il sushi in Italia?
 La sera **guardiamo** la televisione, anche la televisione italiana. **Usiamo** il satellite e guardiamo la RAI. Che cosa **guardate** la sera in TV?
 Il fine settimana mi piace prendere i mezzi pubblici per andare in centro. Io e gli amici di scuola **prendiamo** il treno o il tram. Voi **prendete** tanto il tram? A Milano tutti **prendono** il tram! E a Firenze?
 Per adesso un caro saluto, Matilde, ci vediamo presto,
 con affetto,
 Laura



Riflettiamo

How often do you write emails? What kind of greetings and expressions do you use?



Attività

Trova e coniuga

Look in Laura's email to find the following verbs:

to speak to study to take [a bus etc.] to eat

Can you work out the endings used for *noi, voi, loro*?

Crea

Create a report about you and your family, answering these questions:

Come si chiamano la mamma e il papà?

Hai fratelli e sorelle? Come si chiamano?

Dove abitate?

Usate i mezzi pubblici? Prendete il treno, l'autobus o il tram? Usate l'automobile?

Che cosa mangiate di solito?

Cucinate italiano?

Che cosa o chi visitate il fine settimana?

Che cosa guardate in televisione?



Do you remember how to conjugate verbs in the singular? If you've forgotten, look again at the *Grammatica* in *Capitolo dieci* on page 100.

parliamo we speak
parlano they speak
voi parlate [pl] you speak
abitiamo we live
studiamo we study
studiano they study
visitiamo we visit
visitate [pl] you visit
mangiamo we eat
prepariamo we prepare
cucinate [pl] you cook
mangiano they eat
guardiamo we watch
usiamo we use
guardate [pl] you watch
prendiamo [pl] we take
prendete [pl] you take
prendono [pl] they take

Le indicazioni in una lettera



Ascolta

Listen to the expressions used in writing letters or emails.

cara [f]	<i>dear</i>	caro [m]	<i>dear</i>
cari [m, pl or m+f]	<i>dear</i>	care [f, pl]	<i>dear</i>
scrivi presto	<i>write soon</i>	a presto	<i>see you soon</i>
ci sentiamo	<i>speak soon</i>	tanti baci	<i>lots of kisses</i>
tanti abbracci	<i>lots of hugs</i>	con affetto	<i>lots of love</i>
tanti saluti	<i>best wishes, greetings</i>		

Attività

Immagina

Imagine writing an email to one of the *esplora!* characters. Write something about yourself and ask them appropriate questions.



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au

immagina che...

scenario

Matilde and Gabriele are having a gelato and talking about what's going to happen at Easter. Gabriele wants to invite Matilde out to show off his skateboarding skills.

GABRIELE: Matilde, vai in vacanza a Pasqua quest'anno?

MATILDE: Di solito non andiamo in vacanza, perché io e la mia famiglia non festeggiamo la Pasqua. Voi, dove andate?

GABRIELE: Noi festeggiamo la Pasqua, ma restiamo sempre a casa. Andiamo a fare un po' di sport. Per esempio, io vado sempre in piscina perché mi piace nuotare. Mia sorella va in palestra a fare aerobica o step. Tu vai in palestra o a nuotare?

MATILDE: Sì, vado a nuotare spesso, e vado anche in palestra tutti i giorni con mia mamma. Sono molto sportiva!

GABRIELE: Dove vai a nuotare?

MATILDE: Vado da mia cugina. Ha una piscina a casa.

GABRIELE: Perché non andiamo a vedere un film insieme, in vacanza?

MATILDE: Mmm, il cinema costa, però, e non mi piace tanto.

GABRIELE: Ti piace fare skateboard? Andiamo a fare skateboard, dai!

MATILDE: Mmm, no, solo i ragazzi vanno a fare skateboard.

GABRIELE: Ti va di giocare a tennis, allora?

MATILDE: OK, mi piace giocare a tennis. Allora, quando e a che ora?

GABRIELE: Mmm, ti va mercoledì alle tre di pomeriggio?

MATILDE: Perfetto, ci vediamo mercoledì.

GABRIELE: A mercoledì, non vedo l'ora!

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD

Andare to go ends in -are but it is actually an irregular verb. Irregular verbs do not follow the regular verb patterns. Irregular verbs are always noted in dictionaries and vocabulary lists, and there's a list of these on pages 164 and 165.



Riflettiamo

Have you ever been to Italy? If you went to Italy where would you like to go? Where do you usually go on holiday with your family?

vai? are you going?
 a Pasqua at Easter
 quest'anno this year
 di solito usually
 andiamo we go
 festeggiamo we celebrate
 andate [pl] you are going
 restiamo we stay
 fare sport to play sport
 vado I go
 in piscina to the swimming pool
 nuotare to swim
 va (she) goes
 in palestra to the gym
 tu vai? do you go?
 tutti i giorni every day
 da mia cugina to my cousin's
 però though
 solo only
 i ragazzi boys
 vanno they go
 ti va di giocare? do you feel like playing?
 ti va? do you feel like it?
 non vedo l'ora I can't wait

Attività

Scrivi e presenta

Write sentences using the expressions given and add the correct form of the verb *andare to go*. Check *Grammatica* on page 110 for the conjugation of *andare*. Then find some pictures to match your sentences. You could present your pix in a multimedia presentation or on a poster.

CHI?	DOVE?	CON CHI?
io	a Roma in Italia	da solo
tu	a Firenze in Italia	da sola
Marco	a Sydney in Australia	con amici
Chiara	a Venezia in Italia	con amiche
noi due	a Pompei in Italia	con la scuola
voi tre	a Darwin in Australia	con la mamma
Chiara e Marco	a Christchurch in Nuova Zelanda	con il fratello



Attività

Crea

Create a multimedia report, or a journal with pictures, about where you and your family usually go on holiday. Remember to use the verb *andare*.

Immagina

Working in pairs, imagine you are planning your holidays and are inviting a friend to come away with you. Choose one of these scenarios and create an appropriate conversation:

- you are best friends and you always do everything together
- one of you invites the other who is very difficult to please
- one of you already has holiday plans and cannot come

La città di Milano

Abitanti: circa 1,400,000

Regione: Lombardia

Provincia: Milano, il capoluogo

Superficie: 182 km²

CAP: 20100

Prefisso telefonico: 02

Santo patrono:

Sant'Ambrogio

Giorno festivo:

7 dicembre

Industria: capitale dell'industria in Italia

- tessile • finanza
- editoria • pubblicità
- università • marketing
- moda [capitale della moda europea]
- televisione e radio



Trasporti pubblici:

treno, tram, autobus, metropolitana

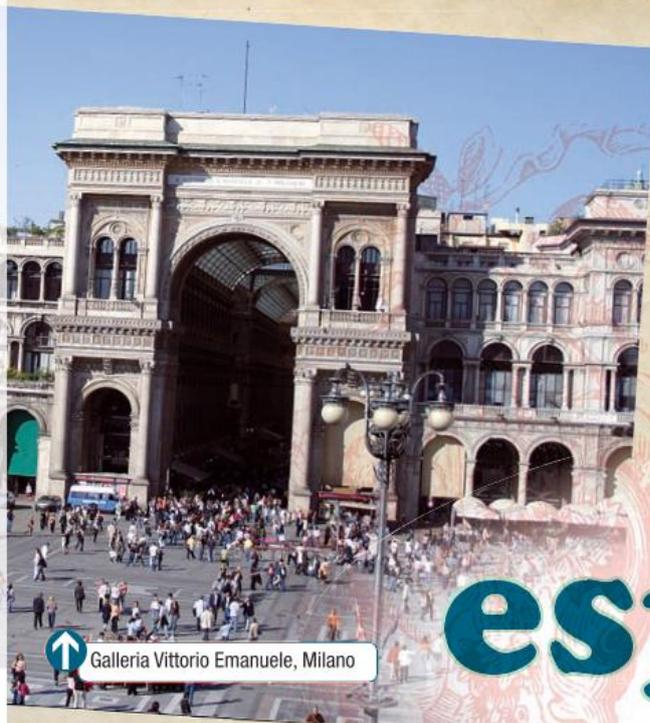
Monumenti e edifici importanti:

- il Duomo
- il Castello Sforzesco
- Pinacoteca di Brera
- *L'Ultima Cena* [Leonardo da Vinci]



Shopping:

- Via Monte Napoleone
- Via della Spiga
- Galleria Vittorio Emanuele Emanuele
- Via Dante



Galleria Vittorio Emanuele, Milano

Attività

In gruppo

In groups, write a *scheda* profile for a major city in your country. Use the internet or other reference material to gather your information. Try to include all the 'categories' used on this page for **Milano**.

Each group member is to be assigned a role: a writer, a designer, a speaker, a researcher and a coordinator.

Presenta

Present the results of your *scheda* as a speech in Italian. Use this one of **Milano** as a model:

La città si chiama Milano.

Ha circa 1,400,000 abitanti.

È in Lombardia.

È il capoluogo di provincia.

Ha una superficie di 182 chilometri quadrati.

Il CAP è 20100.

Il prefisso telefonico è 02.

Il santo patrono è Sant'Ambrogio.

Ci sono le industrie di finanza, tessile, editoria, pubblicità...

I trasporti pubblici sono treno, tram, autobus, metropolitana...

esplor



Riflettiamo

- 1 Were there any 'categories' you couldn't find any information about for your chosen city? Which ones?
- 2 Can you think of any other cities that are like **Milano**?

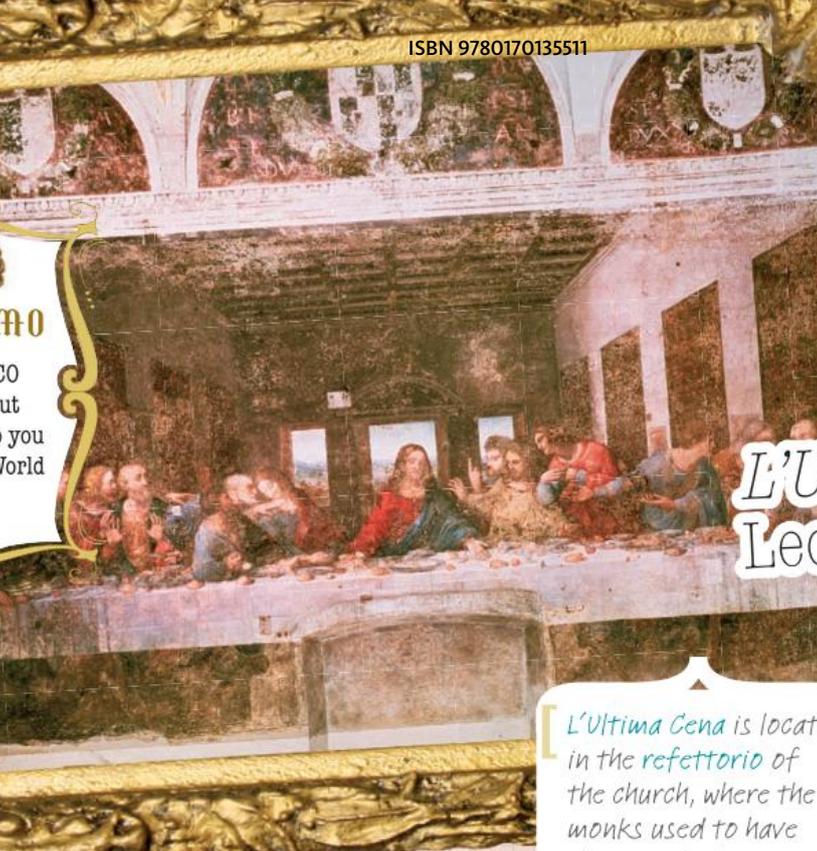


Milan Cathedral, Piazza del Duomo



Riflettiamo

What does UNESCO stand for? Find out what it is. Why do you think we need a World Heritage list?



L'Ultima Cena di Leonardo da Vinci

L'Ultima Cena is located in the refettorio of the church, where the monks used to have their meals. During massive bombings in World War II, the refettorio was almost completely destroyed but, miraculously, the wall with Da Vinci's painting remained standing.

In Milano you can see this amazing Leonardo da Vinci painting known as L'Ultima Cena The Last Supper. It is in the church of Santa Maria delle Grazie. This church was added to the UNESCO World Heritage list in 1980. It is such a popular tourist spot that if you want to go there you have to book weeks before you plan to go!

@mag

La rivista

QUIZ

The World Heritage List includes 851 properties [cultural, natural or mixed sites] in 184 countries. These properties have outstanding natural or cultural value and 41 are in Italy.

Milano has many 'twin' or 'sister' cities. Read the list, and compete in class, saying which country the cities are in. The first person to find all the correct countries will wear the **esperto d'italiano** badge.

Bethlehem	Birmingham	Chicago
Cracow	Dakar	Frankfurt
Lyons	Melbourne	Osaka
São Paulo	St Petersburg	Shanghai
Tel Aviv	Toronto	

Attività

Cerca e crea

Find out what is on the UNESCO World Heritage list. Make a list of the sites in Italy and Australia. Choose some places or things that you find interesting and make a multimedia presentation or poster describing what you've chosen, where they are and a brief description. For information visit: whc.unesco.org.

Immagina

Imagine that you want to suggest an addition to the UNESCO World Heritage list. Write your proposal, including your reasons, a description and images.

Progetto

Imagine you're organising a 'supper' [but not the last one!] with 12 people you admire, or who have influenced your life. They could be celebrities, historical figures or family and friends. Prepare a speech in Italian, explaining the reasons for your choices.

Vorrei invitare... perché è...

grammatica

plural conjugations of -are and -ere verbs

Whenever you use verbs you need to make sure they 'match' the subject [the person or thing doing the action]. This is called conjugation. In *Capitolo dieci* you learned to conjugate verbs with subjects that were singular. However, when the subject is plural [i.e. we, you and they] the endings are different.

parlare [infinitive]	to speak
[noi] parliamo	we speak
[voi] parlate	you speak
[loro] parlano	they speak

prendere [infinitive]	to take
[noi] prendiamo	we take
[voi] prendete [pl]	you take
[loro] prendono	they take

The subject can be indicated by a subject pronoun *io, tu, lui/lei/Lei, noi, voi, loro*, a proper name like *Laura, Chiara, Marco* e *Max* or a noun: *questo ragazzo, questa ragazza, mia mamma e mio papà* etc.

Sometimes the conjugated verb will appear on its own, without a subject, but now you know the endings you should be able to work out who is doing what!

andare [to go]

Some verbs do not follow regular conjugation rules and are called irregular verbs *verbi irregolari*. Irregular verbs have their own conjugation pattern and you just have to learn them. *andare* to go is one of these irregular verb.

[io] vado	I go
[tu] vai	you go
[lui/lei] va	he/she goes
[Lei] va [fml]	you go
[noi] andiamo	we go
[voi] andate	you go
[loro] vanno	they go

Don't worry! You don't have to guess whether a verb is regular or irregular. As you learn verbs we will always tell you if they are irregular and there's also a list of all the verb conjugations from page 162.

simple prepositions

di of, a to, da from, in in, con with, su on, per for, are all simple prepositions. In this *Capitolo* we are focusing on using *in*, *a* and *da*.

You use *a* when you are *at* or *going to* cities, home, school, the theatre, or *going to do* something:

Sono a casa.
I'm at home.

Va a scuola.
He/She goes to school.

Vanno a teatro.
They're going to the theatre.

Andiamo a mangiare.
We are going to eat.

Loro vanno a studiare.
They are going to study.

You use the simple preposition *in* when you are *in* or *going to* countries, a bank or a station.

Chiara va in Italia.
Chiara is going to Italy.



Copy the conjugated -are and -ere verbs from the back of the book on page XX. Highlight the endings, or do them in big coloured letters. Then stick your 'verb tables' somewhere at home, so you can see them again and again – you'll remember them better!

Remember to download podcasts from the *esplora!* website and listen to the vocab on your way to school, or when doing your homework, or even before you go to sleep... then it will seep into your brain!

Marco e Max vanno in Svizzera.

Marco and Max are going to Switzerland.

Laura e Marco vanno in banca.

Laura and Marco are going to the bank.

Noi andiamo in stazione.

We're going to the station.

You use the simple preposition **da** when you are at or going to a person's house, or a place with a name:

Vado da Annamaria.

I'm going to Annamaria's.

Sono da Annamaria adesso.

I'm at Annamaria's now.

Andate da Caffè Brunetti.

You go to Caffè Brunetti.

Vanno da Myer.

They are going to Myer.

Vocabolario

chiedere correre fare nuotare	to ask to run to do/to make to swim	ti va? ti va di giocare?	do you feel like it? do you feel like playing?
chiediamo controlliamo correte [pl] corriamo corrono festeggiamo mangiate [pl] pensano perdiamo prendono restiamo	we ask we check you run we run they run we celebrate you eat they think we lose they take we stay	in metropolitana in palestra in piscina	on the underground train to the gym to the swimming pool
[io] vado [tu] vai [lui/lei] va [noi] andiamo [voi] andate [pl] [loro] vanno	I go you go he/she goes we go you go they go	a Pasqua di solito quest'anno tutti i giorni	at Easter usually this year every day
		che nervi! eccoci corriamo! non vedo l'ora usate la testa [pl]	I'm fed up! here we are let's run I can't wait use your head



Così lontano, così vicino

In this chapter you will learn:

- to use the irregular verb **fare** to do/to make
- some expressions using the verb **fare**
- to leave messages on voicemail
- to talk about the weather
- about Lake Como

puntata dodici

Chasing the TV crew was a bit embarrassing, but it was worth it! Chiara and Marco have followed Fede to the beautiful Lake Como. But Chiara's not looking at the view! She wants to find Fede this time. Bad weather and security guards are not going to stop her!

1 A Como, sul lago...



2



3



4



5 Puntata dodici is set in which part of Como?

www.esplora.com.au



che facciamo? what are we doing?
 la coda queue
 quello that [man]
 il presentatore TV TV presenter
 che vita! what a life!
 tu fai castelli in aria dream on
 fa freddo it's cold
 piove it's raining
 c'è vento it's windy
 tempo weather
 il lago lake
 una passeggiata a walk
 fai un bel bagno you'll get
 drenched [in rain]
 a proposito by the way
 luci lights
 telecamere TV cameras
 fanno impressione they look
 impressive
 entriamo let's go in
 piuttosto instead
 non sono d'accordo I don't
 agree
 non dimenticare don't forget
 non facciamo stupidate let's
 not do anything stupid
 fai sul serio? are you serious?
 fanno they do/make
 fa caldo it's hot
 prossimamente soon
 vinciamo we win
 d'accordo? agreed? OK?
 fate presto [you, pl] hurry
 dietro a behind



Continua...



Riflettiamo

What is the name of the region where Como is located? What other famous cities are in this region? Have a look at the map of Italy!

Uero o falso?

- 1 I ragazzi hanno il biglietto per entrare.
- 2 Piove, fa freddo e c'è anche vento.
- 3 Gli Explora non cantano.
- 4 I ragazzi corrono dietro a Federico.



pratica

Messaggi in segreteria

Ascolta

Listen to the messages left on Marco's voicemail.

1

Ciao, Marco, sono Claudia. Allora, come va? Che fate tu e Chiara? Siete sempre *in giro*? Senti, io faccio una *grigliata* a casa mia questo sabato. Se sei a Roma, sei benvenuto... Oh, anche Chiara, naturalmente! Ci vediamo presto, *spero*.

2

Marco, ciao, sono *il tuo compagno di classe* Alessandro. Come stai? Claudia e *gli altri* fanno una *grigliata* sabato sera, e io faccio un concerto. Tu che fai? *A proposito*: Claudia ed io *facciamo i compiti* stasera in biblioteca. Ti interessa *venire*? Sei a Roma, o in vacanza? Ciao!

3

Marco, sono papà. Grazie del tuo ultimo messaggio email. Ma adesso, dove siete tu e Chiara esattamente? *Fate i bravi* e chiamate casa, per favore. *A proposito*: che fa Federico? È con te? E Massimiliano? Voi tre fate preoccupare tutti... Chiama presto!



Attività

The *cc* in *faccio* and *facciamo* is pronounced *ch* like in *Ciao!*, but it is stressed a little bit more and you hold the *ch* a little bit longer. Listen again to Marco's voicemail messages, and practise saying *faccio* and *facciamo*!

Leggi e trova

Read *Puntata dodici* on pages 112 and 113 again, and find all the examples of the verb *fare*. If you are not sure of the pattern of this verb [its conjugation] check the *Grammatica* on page 120.

Scrivi

Write sentences about what these people are doing, using the verb *fare*. Remember to conjugate the verb according to who is doing the action.



1
Lucrezia - un concerto



2
noi - una grigliata



3
voi - una festa



4
io - i compiti

Espressioni con 'fare'



Ascolta

fare i compiti	to do homework	fare un viaggio	to take a trip
fare il biglietto	to buy a ticket	fare castelli in aria	to do everything possible
fare la fila/la coda	to queue	fare di tutto	to do everything possible
fare la spesa	to do the shopping	fare alla romana	to split the bill
fare una domanda	to ask a question	fare il pieno	to fill the petrol tank
fare una fotografia	to take a photo	fare il bagno	to have a bath
fare una passeggiata	to take a walk	fare la doccia	to have a shower
fare colazione	to have breakfast		

Attività

Scrivi

Find some pictures to illustrate expressions using *fare* [you could use your own photos or pix from a magazine]. Write a sentence to accompany each picture, and organise them in a PowerPoint presentation or on a poster. See how many you can find.

Immagina

Imagine you are calling a friend to make plans for the weekend. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have, using as many expressions with *fare* as you can. You could act out your conversation in front of the class, and see which pair can use the most expressions with the verb *fare*!

in giro out and about
una grigliata a barbecue
spero I hope
il tuo compagno di classe
your classmate
gli altri the others
a proposito by the way
facciamo we are doing
i compiti homework
venire to come
fate i bravi be good

immagina che...

scenario

Marco and Chiara talk about the weather forecast.



CHIARA: Allora, oggi a Como fa freddo: ci sono solo 10 gradi centigradi. Piove e c'è vento. Stasera, forse, nevicata! Che schifo! Che tempo fa a Milano?

MARCO: A Milano fa brutto tempo anche. Oggi c'è vento come qui a Como, fa abbastanza freddo e c'è la nebbia: ci sono solo 15 gradi.

CHIARA: Che tempo fa a Roma, invece?

MARCO: A Roma, fa bel tempo. C'è il sole, il cielo azzurro e fa caldo, ci sono 24 gradi.

CHIARA: Che differenza! Che tempo fa a Palermo, al sud?

MARCO: Allora, fa bel tempo e c'è il sole. La temperatura massima è 27 gradi e la minima... 20. Che fortunati! Il mare è molto mosso, però.

CHIARA: E in Australia, a Sydney e a Melbourne? Che tempo fa?

MARCO: Aspetta un attimo che controllo... a Melbourne fa brutto tempo, insomma, fa abbastanza caldo, ma è nuvoloso. Invece, a Sydney c'è bel tempo, c'è il sole e ci sono 25 gradi adesso.

CHIARA: Beh, a Melbourne non sei mai sicuro... perché ci sono quattro stagioni in un giorno!

16°
Milano

24°
Roma

27°
Palermo

Check out the
video on the
Esplora! DVD





Attività

Controlla e scrivi

Find out what the weather is like today in these Italian cities: Roma, Milano, Firenze, Napoli, Como, Palermo and Venezia. Then write a description for each city following this model:

A Roma fa... la temperatura massima è... gradi e la minima è...

You can find the information on many international weather websites.

Controlla e chiedi

In pairs, find out the weather forecasts for Melbourne, Sydney, Adelaide, Darwin, Perth, Brisbane, Alice Springs, Hobart, Wellington, Christchurch and Auckland. You can get the information from the newspaper or the internet. When you've got the information, ask each other about the weather in these cities.

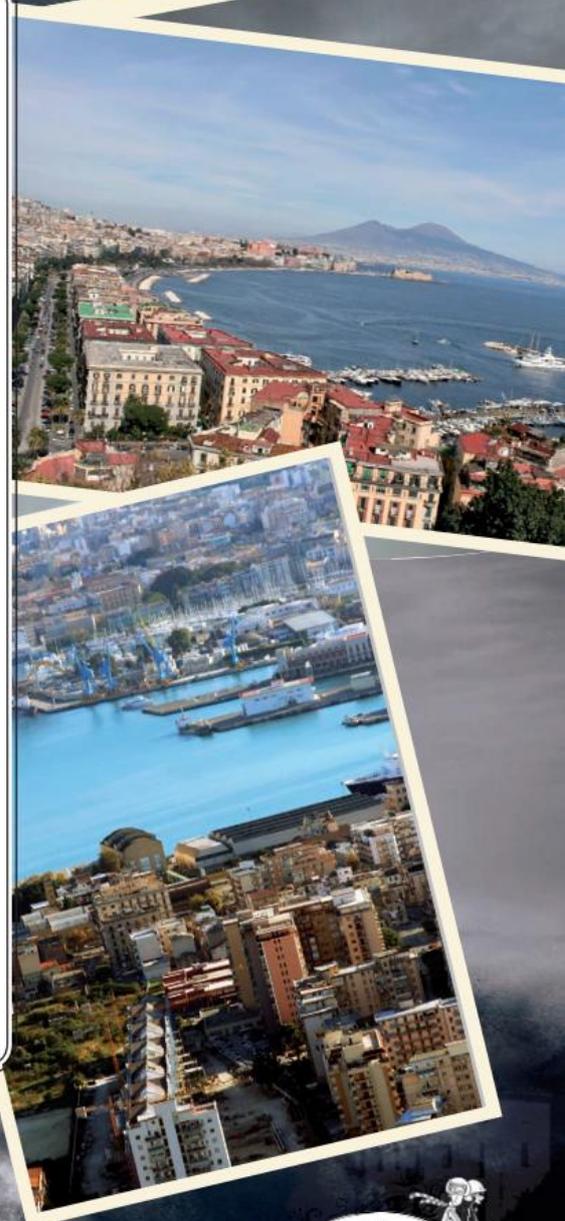
Crea

Create a TV weather report for Italy. In groups of three or four, decide the name of your Italian TV channel, write the script for the forecast, and use a map of Italy to describe the weather around the boot of Italy! You could record your performance.

fa freddo it's cold
 10 gradi centigradi 10 degrees Celsius
 piove it's raining
 c'è vento it's windy
 nevica it's snowing
 che schifo! how disgusting!
 che tempo fa? what's the weather like?
 fa brutto tempo it's awful weather
 c'è la nebbia it's foggy
 fa bel tempo it's nice weather
 c'è il sole it's sunny
 fa caldo it's hot
 il mare the sea
 mosso rough [sea]
 è nuvoloso it's cloudy
 invece instead
 quattro stagioni four seasons



For more expressions visit www.esplora.com.au



Che tempo fa in Italia?

Italy is lucky to have what's called a 'temperate' climate *clima temperato*, that is the weather is not usually too hot or cold. This is because the Alps in the north of Italy act as a barrier to protect the country from the extreme weather which comes from countries to the north of Italy.

Winters are cold in the Alps and the Apennines, but this makes conditions there ideal for skiing and snowboarding. Summers are mild and usually rainy in the north, and hotter in areas close to the sea. The further south you go, the hotter it becomes. In the far south, like in Sicily and Sardinia, it can be very hot and dry in summer.

For a weekly weather forecast you'll have to remember the days of the week *lunedì, martedì, mercoledì, giovedì, venerdì, sabato, domenica*.

esplor@

Lago di Como

- third biggest lake in Italy
- the deepest lake in Europe [410 metres]
- has a Y shape
- has one island called **Comacina**
- **Morterone in Valsassina** is a town on the banks of Lago di Como. It is the smallest town in Europe, with a population of only 29 people!
- has mild weather all year round
- is well known for its beautiful old villas [where many wealthy soccer players and actors live!]



Riflettiamo

What's the weather like where you live? Is it the same for all parts of the country? What about other capital cities to the north or south of where you live?

Attività

Create an advertisement for Como and its lake. Work in groups, and include pictures, a slogan, and descriptions in Italian. *Andiamo a Lago di Como!*



mag

La rivista

QUIZ

What city will be revealed in the description below? Use your general knowledge and what you have studied so far to find the answer. The first person to guess the mystery city wears the **esperto d'italiano** badge.

Buongiorno, signori e signore, sono la città misteriosa. Sono nel nord-est d'Italia. Sono costruita su tante isole. Durante il mio Carnevale, fa freddo. Le mie temperature massime sono 7.7 gradi centigradi. Su una mia isola famosa fanno il vetro decorato. Che città sono? Sono...

I promessi sposi

Italian school students in Year 8 have to study a famous novel in their Italian language classes. The novel is called *I Promessi Sposi The Betrothed*, and was written by the author, Alessandro Manzoni, in the 19th century. The story is about Renzo and Lucia, who were engaged, but are forced apart by an evil Spanish lord who is in love with Lucia and doesn't want her to marry anyone else. The story begins in Como and moves to the region of Lombardy during a time of Spanish domination of Italy in the 17th century.

The author Alessandro Manzoni is so well-regarded that many streets and schools have been named after him.

Attività

Ricerca e trova

Find out more about the author Alessandro Manzoni. Do an internet search of his name. You need to include his first name, Alessandro, as well as his surname, because so many things have been named after him! In your presentation include pictures and biographical information. You can present your findings electronically or in a poster.

Progetti

Imagine you are the weather presenter on your favourite TV channel. Make a script for the weather forecast **le previsioni del tempo** for your city. Check the internet or newspapers for details of the weather forecast for the next week. Then write a script for your 'weather segment', including appropriate greetings [to the viewers], the minimum and maximum temperatures forecast for each day of the week, and whether it will be sunny, rainy, windy etc. You might like to record your performance.



grammatica

fare [to do/to make]

The verb *fare* to do or to make is another irregular verb with its own special pattern of conjugation. [If you've forgotten irregular verbs, have a look again at the Grammatica in Capitolo undici on page 110.]

[io] faccio	<i>I do/I make</i>
[tu] fai	<i>you do/you make</i>
[lui/lei] fa	<i>he/she does/makes</i>
[Lei] fa [fml]	<i>you do/make</i>
[noi] facciamo	<i>we do/we make</i>
[voi] fate [pl]	<i>you do/you make</i>
[loro] fanno	<i>they do/they make</i>

faccio i compiti per italiano

I am doing homework for Italian

tu fai gli spaghetti per cena

you are making spaghetti for dinner

Chiara fa sport ogni giorno

Chiara plays sport every day

noi facciamo tante cose insieme

we do a lot of things together

voi fate troppo rumore

you make too much noise

Marco e Chiara fanno ricerche

Marco and Chiara are doing research

fare is a really useful verb to know because it is used in many expressions. Have a look at page 115 for some examples.



Vocabolario

Here are some ideas for how to memorise all the conjugations of irregular verbs [like *fare* and *andare*]:

- create a poster or table in bright colours and cool fonts
- repeat them every night before you go to sleep, or listen to them on an MP3 player. [Did you know your brain retains more information at night?]
- record or download the verbs, and listen to them on your way to school or while doing chores
- create a jingle, using a song you like, to repeat the conjugations
- repeat them every day for a week with a friend... you have to do them once, and you'll hear your friend repeat them!

fare (io) faccio (tu) fai (lui/lei) fa (Lei) fa [fml] (noi) facciamo (voi) fate [pl] (loro) fanno	to do/to make I do/I make you do/you make he/she does/makes you do/make we do/we make you do/you make they do/they make
--	--

fare castelli in aria fare impressione fare la coda fare sul serio fare un bel bagno fare una grigliata fare una passeggiata	to daydream, dream on to look impressive to queue to be serious [not joking] to get drenched [in the rain] to have a barbecue to take/go for a walk
--	--

10 gradi centigradi c'è il sole c'è la nebbia c'è vento che tempo fa?	10 degrees Celsius it's sunny it's foggy it's windy what's the weather like?
---	--

è nuvoloso fa bel tempo fa brutto tempo fa caldo fa freddo il mare è molto mosso nevica piove quattro stagioni tempo	it's cloudy it's nice weather it's awful weather it's hot it's cold the sea is very rough it's snowing it's raining four seasons weather
---	--

a proposito... che schifo! che vita! d'accordo essere d'accordo fate i bravi! mai non dimenticare non facciamo stupidate piuttosto prossimamente ultimamente	by the way... how disgusting! what a life! agreed, OK to agree be good! never don't forget let's not do anything stupid instead soon recently
---	--



Un ragazzo carino per Laura

In this chapter you will learn:

- to use the irregular verbs **stare** to stay, **dare** to give, **bere** to drink
- expressions using **stare** and **dare**
- to describe your feelings
- to talk about your health with the doctor
- about the city of Bologna

DAMS is a faculty at the University of Bologna. It is the oldest university in the world [it started in 1088]! In the DAMS faculty students enrol to become experts in... hang on! That's too easy. Let's follow Marco and Chiara, with her arty cousin Laura, to discover what DAMS is. Will Laura drive them crazy trying to drag them along to museums and monuments? Maybe not this time...

1 A Bologna...



2



3



4



puntata

tredici...

What does the M in DAMS stand for?



www.esplora.com.au

5

...ma non stiamo qui! I laureati danno una festa oggi per le matricole. Bevete o mangiate qualcosa? Tutto GRATIS!

Grazie mille. Mi piacciono le feste!

E da quando? Laura sta bene oggi?

Che male! Ho i crampi...

GROOOOAAAANN!

6

Grande! Ci sono tante cose buone: tortellini, focacce, formaggi, limonata fresca... lo mangio e bevo tutto qui!

Che fame!

TUTTO GRATIS!!!

7 Più tardi...

Oh, accidenti! Ho mal di pancia, mal di testa, mal di denti e i crampi... Forse è indigestione!

Come state, ragazzi? Non avete una bella faccia... Mangiato troppo?

Ohh, anch'io sto malissimo... La mia pancia!

8

Stiamo male, malissimo! Abbiamo mal di... tutto!

Voi due! Date un'occhiata qui...

Maranello: musica eccezionale e... la FERRARI TESTA ROSSA

EXPLORA

Continua...

vero o falso?

- 1 I ragazzi sono all'università di Firenze.
- 2 Luca studia arte al DAMS.
- 3 Le matricole danno una festa.
- 4 Marco e Chiara mangiano troppo.



Riflettiamo

- 1 What do you think about becoming an actor or an artist?
- 2 What subjects do you think the students at DAMS in Bologna need to study to become professional artists?

una facoltà a faculty
 diventare to become
 spettacolo drama [film, TV, theatre]
 diamo un'occhiata let's have a look
 voi date [pl] you give
 io do I give
 fuori outside
 mal di pancia stomach ache
 le matricole first-year university students
 ci dai una mano? will you give us a hand?
 danno they are giving
 non ricordo I don't remember
 altro che...! forget about...!
 stiamo we stay
 i laureati the graduates
 bevete [pl] you drink
 gratis free
 da quando? since when?
 formaggi cheeses
 bevo I drink
 mal di testa headache
 mal di denti toothache



pratica

Un messaggio blog per Valentina

Ascolta

Listen to Chiara reading the blog message she has just posted to her best friend Valentina, one of her classmates, on their school site. Chiara is at the University of Bologna library, and she is updating all her friends about her Italian adventures.

Scrivi un commento

Nome

Indirizzo e-mail

Ciao bella [e tutti gli amici],

come stai? Io sto benissimo, ma sono stanca. Come sta tua sorella? E **tutti gli amici**, come stanno? **State in spiaggia** tutto il giorno, eh? Bravi!

Scrivo in italiano perché mi piace... e faccio anche **bella figura**.

Qui in Italia **vado in giro** con Marco, un amico di Federico. **Noi stiamo in ostelli o da amici**, così spendiamo poco. Marco è carino, tanto, ma anche un po' noioso **a volte**...

Lui **mi dà una mano** per trovare Federico.

Viaggiamo tanto in Vespa [Marco ha una Vespa rossa, carina!]. In Italia i ragazzi vanno tanto in motorino. Io **do** sempre **i numeri** quando viaggiamo in centro città, però, perché il traffico è pazzo!

E Fede? Beh, non c'è. Va in giro con la sua band, gli Explora. **Danno** tanti concerti e partecipano a **gare** musicali. **Il sogno?** **Sfondare** in televisione e **diventare** super-famosi!

Quando **lo trovo**, **do una mega festa**, sei già invitata!

Federico canta benissimo, va bene, ma **dà sui nervi**. Pensa solo a **sé stesso**, ma è sempre the best!

Ah, poi c'è Massimiliano, o Max per gli amici. Lui è svizzero, divertente, ma non è molto intelligente, secondo me... Max **non aiuta** tanto: spesso **dà fastidio**, onestamente! Adesso vado, cara,

ciao bella, TVTB,

Chiara

NB Mando una fotografia di me, Marco e Max a Como. Ti piace? Scrivi!!!



Riflettiamo

- How do you use blogs and emails? What about other members of your family?
- Why do you think Italians use a lot of English words in ICT such as **e-mail**, **computer**...?

Attività

Trova e scrivi

Find where parts of the verb **stare** to stay and **dare** to give are used in Chiara's blog and **Puntata tredici** on pages 122 and 123. Write them down as they occur in the texts, with the appropriate pronoun: **io**, **tu**, **lui**, **lei**, **noi**, **voi** or **loro**. If you are not sure about **stare** or **dare** have a look at the **Grammatica** on page 130.

Attività

dare and *stare* are **verbi irregolari** but they have a similar pattern, so if you learn them together they are easier to remember.



1 la ragazza -
stare bene



2 io - stare
malissimo



3 loro - stare
in spiaggia



4 il gladiatore -
stare a Roma,
al Colosseo



5 voi due -
stare da
amici in Italia



6 noi - stare
benissimo

Scrivi

Write captions for these pictures, using the prompts given and the correct form of the verb **stare** to stay.

Gira e chiedi

Move around the class and when the teacher claps, turn to the nearest person. Imagine you haven't seen them for a while so... greet them, shake hands, ask them how they are and how their friends and members of their family are.

tutti gli amici all our friends
come stanno? how are they?
state [pl] you stay
in spiaggia on the beach
faccio bella figura I make a
good impression
vado in giro I'm travelling
around
noi stiamo we're staying
in ostelli in hostels
da amici with friends
a volte at times
mi dà una mano he's giving
me a hand
io do i numeri I go crazy
beh well
danno they give
gare competitions
il sogno dream
sfondare to make it
diventare to become
lo trovo I find him
do I [will] give
una mega festa a mega party
sui nervi he gets on my nerves
sé stesso himself
non aiuta he doesn't help
dà fastidio he's annoying
TVTB [ti voglio tanto bene]
I love you very much [with
family and friends]

Espressioni con 'dare'



Ascolta

Listen to some expressions Chiara has learnt in Italy.

dare una mano	to give a hand
dare i numeri	to go crazy
dare fastidio	to annoy
dare una festa	to throw a party
dare un concerto	to give a concert

Attività

Immagina

Imagine you are replying to Chiara's blog on page 124 by writing your own blog or an email. Ask Chiara about her time in Bologna and comment on the photo she sent you. When you have finished, read it out to the class... see who can understand everything you've written.

immagina che...

scenario

Chiara is not feeling well. Maybe she ate too much at the graduation party! Laura goes with Chiara to see a doctor in Bologna.

Remember, in Italian you address people with *Lei*, [not *Tu*] when you are speaking formally to adults. Read this scenario and find some examples of formal expressions.

LAURA: Come stai Chiara? Non hai un bel colore...

CHIARA: Sto malissimo!

LAURA: Che cos' hai?

CHIARA: Ho **mal di testa** e **mal di denti**. Ho bisogno di un'aspirina. Che male!

Dalla dottoressa Carusi...

DOTTORESSA: Buongiorno, signorina.

CHIARA: Buongiorno, Dottoressa.

DOTTORESSA: Allora, come si chiama, signorina?

CHIARA: Mi chiamo Chiara Bianco.

DOTTORESSA: Come sta oggi, signorina Bianco?

CHIARA: Ovviamente, sto male... malissimo. Ho mal di testa.

DOTTORESSA: E basta?

CHIARA: Macché! Ho anche mal di denti e **mal di schiena**.

DOTTORESSA: Mmm, non c'è **febbre**. Ma... ha un **dente cariato**, signorina.

CHIARA: Oh no! **Odio i dentisti!**

DOTTORESSA: Allora, ecco una ricetta per un **antidolorifico** e Le consiglio anche di bere tanta acqua naturale.

CHIARA: Oh no. Non mi piacciono le medicine: **pillole, capsule, sciroppi, creme, iniezioni, aspirine...** e antidolorifici. Odio le medicine. Adesso, ho anche mal di stomaco.



Riflettiamo

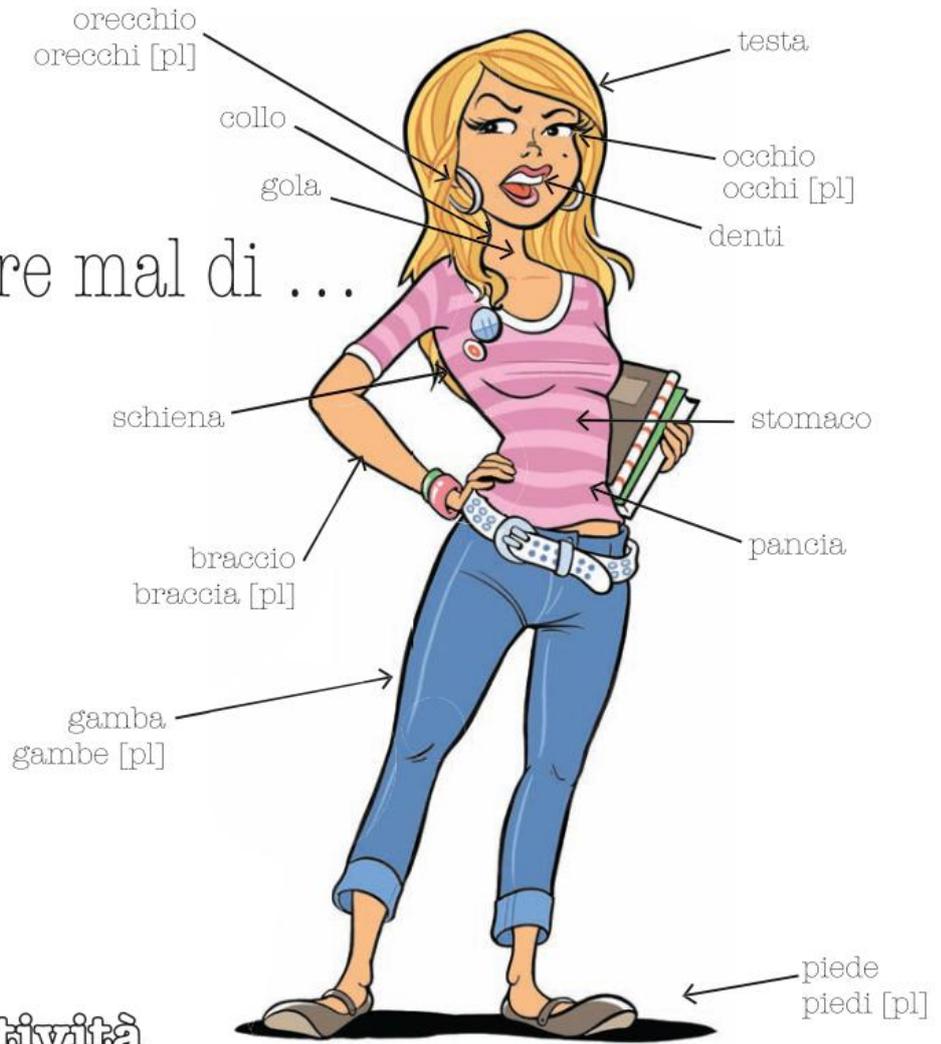
Have you ever needed to see a doctor in another country? Were you able to communicate with him or her?

In Italy the local government allocates a doctor to everyone, although you can change to another doctor if you want to. What do you think about this system?

- mal di testa headache
- mal di denti toothache
- mal di schiena backache
- febbre fever
- un dente cariato a decayed tooth
- odio I hate
- i dentisti dentists
- una ricetta a prescription
- un antidolorifico a painkiller
- Le consiglio di...[fml] I advise you to...
- pillole pills
- capsule capsules
- sciroppi syrups
- creme creams
- iniezioni injections



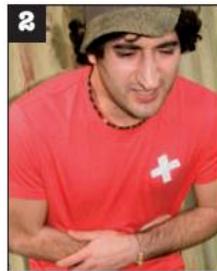
Avere mal di ...



Attività

Guarda e scrivi

Look at these people at Doctor Carusi's, and write what they are saying.



Immagina a coppie

Working in pairs, imagine you are in a doctor's surgery. The receptionist asks the patients how they are and what the problem is. Take turns being the receptionist and different patients. Alternate the scenarios to use formal and informal language [i.e. when the receptionist is friends with some of the patients]. Here are some phrases you can use:

- Buongiorno!
- Come stai?
- Che cos'hai esattamente?
- Che cos'ha [Lei] esattamente?

- Ciao!
- Come sta Lei?
- Ti consiglio di...
- Le consiglio di...



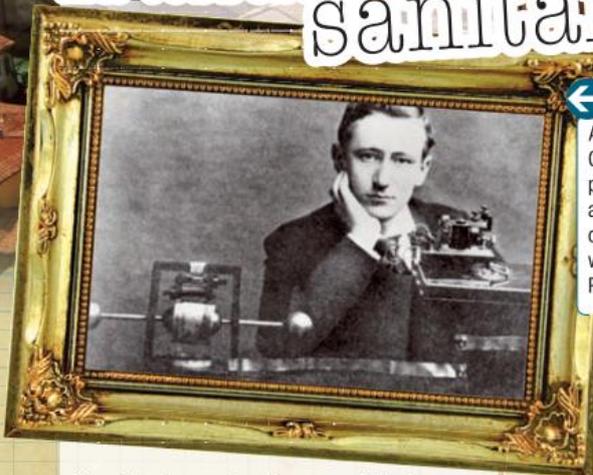
For more expressions visit www.esplora.com.au



Andiamo a Bologna!

There's a really cool way to see all of Bologna at once. You can climb the 498 steps of **Torre degli Asinelli**. 'Asinelli' means *donkeys*, but it was actually the name of a rich family in Bologna who paid for the tower to be built. During World War II [1939–1945] it was used as a watchtower to warn people about approaching German bombers. Look at the picture showing the view of Bologna. Why do you think Bologna is called *la rossa*, the red city?

La tessera sanitaria



A famous *bolognese*, Guglielmo Marconi, pioneer of the radio and all 'wireless' communication. He won the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1909.

Residents and citizens of Italy each have a health card to use the national health-care service. In 2005, the card, **il tesserino sanitario nazionale**, was upgraded to a magnetic card that contains the following information:

- name, date and place of birth
- medical information
- Braille characters for the blind
- tax number in a bar code
- health insurance information

Sue giù

Su: Bologna is close to the Adriatic Sea which is about an hour's drive from the city. The Adriatic coast is famous for its sandy beaches and nightlife for young people. There are open-air discos for teenagers right on the beach!

Giù: In 1980 a bomb exploded at Bologna station, killing 85 people and leaving many more badly injured. The station was completely destroyed, which caused major transport problems for weeks. An Italian terrorist group called the **Brigate Rosse** Red Brigades claimed responsibility for the attack.

esplor@

Why not listen to Italian music while completing your projects? Connect to www.radioitalia.it and follow the instructions [which are available in English]. Then you can listen to Italian radio online... your pronunciation will improve quickly this way!

Can you be the first to write a list of 10 tourist attractions in Bologna? If you do you could win the badge of **esperto d'italiano**. Use reference books from the library, the links on the **esplora!** website or the internet. Just type **Bologna** in a search engine.



Bologna: La Grassa

Italians call Bologna *La Grassa the Fat!* This might not sound too good, but Italians see it as a compliment because Bologna is seen as a centre of fine food! The *bolognesi* [the people of Bologna] believe in the 'art of cooking', and cooking methods using local ingredients have been passed on through generations.

← La Torre dell'orologio, the clock tower [over 800 years old]



Riflettiamo

Where do you find local food specialities in your country? Are any cities in your country famous for their food or restaurants? If you went overseas what Australian foods would you recommend people should try?



@mag
La rivista

Specialità bolognesi

Yes, Bologna is where the world-famous *spaghetti alla Bolognese* originally comes from. There are also other specialities of Bologna that you may have tried – *tortellini* and *mortadella*. Mortadella is classified as *IGP [Indicazione Geografica Protetta]*. This means the name *mortadella* can only be used if it's been made in specified areas around Bologna, or it has been made according to the *Bolognese* technique and been officially approved!

Progetto

Create a poster, Movie Maker or PowerPoint presentation to promote tourism in the city of Bologna. To describe its attractions use expressions like *c'è, ci sono, questo è, questa è*. To convince people to go there, use suggestions like *vai!, immagina!, vedi!, mangia!, trova!* or you could find other instructions used in *esplora!* Have a class competition or vote for the presentation that would attract the most tourists.

→ Piazza Maggiore or Piazza Grande, the medieval square



grammatica

Irregular verbs dare and stare

The verbs *dare to give* and *stare to stay* are irregular *-are* verbs. They both have a similar pattern so are often learned at the same time.

[io] do	<i>I give</i>
[tu] dai	<i>you give</i>
[lui/lei] dà	<i>he/she gives</i>
[Lei] dà [fml]	<i>you give</i>
[noi] diamo	<i>we give</i>
[voi] date [pl]	<i>you give</i>
[loro] danno	<i>they give</i>

[io] sto	<i>I stay</i>
[tu] stai	<i>you stay</i>
[lui/lei] sta	<i>he/she stays</i>
[Lei] [fml] sta	<i>you stay</i>
[noi] stiamo	<i>we stay</i>
[voi] state [pl]	<i>you stay</i>
[loro] stanno	<i>they stay</i>



Riflettiamo

Can you think of an English word that also starts with *bev...* and has something to do with drinks?

irregular verb bere

bere to drink is also an irregular verb. The endings are the same as regular *-ere* verbs, but it is the stem [*bev...*] that is irregular.

[io] bevo	<i>I drink</i>
[tu] bevi	<i>you drink</i>
[lui/lei] beve	<i>he/she drinks</i>
[Lei] beve [fml]	<i>you drink</i>
[noi] beviamo	<i>we drink</i>
[voi] bevete [pl]	<i>you drink</i>
[loro] bevono	<i>they drink</i>

avere mal di...

To say that you have some sort of *pain* or *ache* in Italian you usually use the expression *avere mal di...*

ho mal di testa	<i>I have a headache</i>
tu hai mal di denti	<i>you have a toothache</i>
Chiara ha mal di schiena.	<i>Chiara has a backache</i>

You need to use the appropriate part of the verb *avere* to fit the person who's in pain.

In English there are two ways to talk about aches and pains. For example, you can say *my head hurts* or *I have a headache*. It is similar in Italian. As well as using expressions with *avere* [listed above] it is also possible to use the expression *mi fa male...* or *mi fanno male...* These expressions literally mean that something makes pain. The one you use depends on whether what is causing you pain is singular or plural.

mi fa male il piede
my foot hurts

mi fanno male i piedi
my feet hurt

mi fa male l'orecchio
my ear hurts/I have an earache

mi fanno male gli orecchi
my ears hurt

parts of the body

You can see some parts of the body in Italian on page 127 in *Pratica*. For a longer list have a look at the *Vocabolario* list on page 131.

Three of these *body* words can be a bit of a pain! [Bad joke!] You might notice they have their own special rules when they become plural!

il ginocchio knee and *il braccio arm* are both masculine words, but when they are used in the plural they become feminine!

<i>il ginocchio</i>	<i>knee</i>
<i>le ginocchia</i>	<i>knees</i>
<i>il braccio</i>	<i>arm</i>
<i>le braccia</i>	<i>arms</i>

[There is also a masculine plural form *i bracci*, but this word refers to mechanical arms, not human ones!]

The other 'weird' body part is *la mano hand*. It ends in *-o* but it is feminine



Even when Italian verbs are irregular, they often have endings that are similar to regular verbs. There is a list of all the verbs used in *esplora!* at the back of the book. If you practise them often you'll soon learn the patterns!

[usually words ending in -o are masculine] and it uses the feminine article *la*. However, it does stay feminine in the plural!

la mano hand
le mani hands

This may sound confusing but if you just learn what each one means, and you know they are 'special', you'll get used to it. You might also like to know that some Italians make mistakes when they use these words!

Vocabolario

bere	to drink	una ricetta	a prescription
dare fastidio	to annoy	sciroppi	syrups
dare i numeri	to go crazy	le braccia	arms
dare sui nervi	to get on somebody's nerves	il braccio	arm
dare una mano	to give a hand [help]	i capelli	hair
dare un'occhiata	to have a look	il collo	neck
fare bella figura	to make a good impression	il dente	tooth
odio	I hate	i denti	teeth
stare	to stay	la gamba	leg
come stanno?	how are they?	le gambe	legs
Le consiglio di... [fml]	I advise you to...	le ginocchia	knees
ti consiglio di...	I advise you to...	il ginocchio	knee
avere mal di...	to have a... -ache	la gola	throat
mal di denti	toothache	le mani	hands
mal di pancia	stomach ache	la mano	hand
mal di schiena	backache	gli occhi	eyes
mal di testa	headache	l'occhio	eye
mi fa male...	something hurts	gli orecchi	ears
mi fanno male... [pl]	something hurts	l'orecchio	ear
un antidolorifico	a painkiller	la pancia	stomach
capsule	capsules	il piede	foot
creme	creams	i piedi	feet
iniezioni	injections	la testa	head
pillole	pills	cariato	decayed [tooth]
		da amici	with friends
		gratis	free
		in ostelli	in hostels



NAPOLI

ROMA

TORINO

AVELLINO

CALABRIA

BOLOGNA

VENEZIA

131 centotrentuno



Capitolo 13

Una passione tutta rossa

In this chapter you will learn:

- to use regular **-ire** verbs
- to use the irregular verb **dire** to say
- how to express amazement, excitement, disappointment
- about Ferrari and Formula One motor racing
- about sport in Italy



Can you hear the racing Ferrari? Marco and Chiara have followed Federico to the home of Ferrari – the Ferrari factory in Maranello. Marco knew Federico loves racing cars, but did he know that Chiara loves Ferraris too? But what comes first for her?... finding Fede or a Ferrari?

1 Che storia! La Galleria Ferrari! Queste auto costano un occhio! Che dici, Chiara? Ti piacciono?

Che dico?! Che mi piacciono! Senti! Il mio cuore...

Cavallino Ferrari

2 Chiara, ti presento Cristian, mio cugino. È lui che organizza le conferenze-stampa qui a Maranello. Tutti dicono che è il migliore.

Che interessante! Piacere.

Piacere. Allora, voi due, è vero che cercate Federico e che non chiamate casa da un bel pò?

3 Più tardi, nel parcheggio...

Ops... Allora, mio papà è arrabbiato, Cristian?

Mmm, tuo papà è preoccupato! Apri le orecchie: è ora di andare a casa...

Già... vero... ma... Oh, accidenti! Una Ferrari Mondial! Che sogno! Cristian, è tua?!!

4 Sì, è mia! Sentite, voi due 'fuggitivi': che ne dite di tornare a Roma?

Sì, ma... Fede?

Oh, Fede di qui e Fede di là! Sono stufo! Senti, Marco, andiamo!

puntata
quattordici...



What is the Italian name for the Ferrari prancing horse?



www.esplora.com.au

5



E se partiamo con... QUESTA???
Che ne dite?



ECCEZIONALE!
Dai, torniamo a Roma!!!

6

Sentite che motore? Che potenza?



Sì che sentiamo!
Qua la mano, Chiara!

Partiamo!

7

In viaggio verso Roma...

Macché dormire! Chi dorme su una Ferrari? Siamo in trance. Vero, Marco?

Ehi, voi due, dormite? Siete così silenziosi!!!

Vero!



Ehi, voi due, partite senza di me e senza dire 'arrivederci'?! Scherzo! Ci vediamo a Roma, amici. Ciao!

che storia! how cool!
costano un occhio very expensive [they cost an eye]
che dici? what do you say?
che dico what do I say?
il mio cuore my heart
le conferenze-stampa press conferences
dicono they say
il migliore the best
arrabbiato angry
apri le orecchie open your ears [listen]
è ora di it's time to
che sogno! what a dream!
sentite [pl] listen
fuggitivi fugitives
che ne dite [pl]...? what do you say about...?



Riflettiamo

1 Do you like *Formula Uno*? Have you ever seen a Ferrari? What sports car or racing motorbikes would you like to drive if you could?

2 Can you name any famous identities in *Formula Uno* or any other racing sports?

Sono stufo! I'm sick of it!
partiamo we leave
motore motor
potenza power
sentiamo we hear
qua la mano give me five
verso towards
dormite? [pl] are you sleeping?
silenziosi silent
dormire to sleep
chi dorme? who sleeps?
partite? [pl] are you leaving?
senza dire without saying

Vero o falso?

- 1 Le Ferrari costano tantissimo.
- 2 Chiara è molto emozionata.
- 3 Cristian è un meccanico a Maranello.
- 4 Il papà di Marco non è preoccupato.



pratica

Un aspirante pilota di Formula Uno



Ascolta

Listen to this interview with Diana, a girl who wants to become a **Formula Uno** driver.

GIORNALISTA: Diana, quante ore dormi prima di una gara?

DIANA: Io dormo almeno otto ore ma altri piloti dormono anche di più!

GIORNALISTA: È importante dormire tanto per un pilota, allora?

DIANA: Ovviamente. È vitale. Guidare così veloce è una responsabilità.

GIORNALISTA: Che cosa senti quando guidi velocemente in pista?

DIANA: Oh, sento così tante emozioni! Sicuramente tutti i piloti sentono tanta adrenalina! È emozionante...

GIORNALISTA: Sei così giovane e determinata. E mamma e papà? Che cosa dicono loro di questa tua passione?

DIANA: Mia mamma dice che sono pazza! Mio papà è un meccanico a Maranello e gli piacciono i motori. Ovviamente, lui dice che sono bravissima!

GIORNALISTA: Che cosa ti piace di più in questa professione?

DIANA: Quando parto a tutta velocità... Mi piace partire in quarta!

GIORNALISTA: È molto competitivo diventare un pilota professionista, soprattutto per una ragazza. Che ne dici, Diana?

DIANA: Dico a tutti: è ora di aprire le porte della Formula Uno a noi donne... perché siamo forti!

GIORNALISTA: In bocca al lupo, Diana.

The verb *dire* means to say or to tell. It is an irregular verb... check its conjugations in *Grammatica* on page 140. Try this useful *dire* expression for learning Italian: *Come si dice... in italiano? How do you say... in Italian? Si dice... You say...*



Riflettiamo

- 1 What do you want to do when you leave school? Do you have a career in mind?
- 2 Who are some famous sports women in your country?

quante ore? how many hours?
 dormi you sleep
 prima di una gara before a competition
 almeno at least
 altri other
 piloti racing car drivers
 dormono they sleep
 dormire to sleep
 guidare to drive
 che cosa senti? what do you feel?
 sento così tante emozioni I feel so many emotions
 che cosa dicono? what do they say?
 dice she says
 parto I leave
 a tutta velocità at full speed
 partire to depart/take off
 diventare to become
 soprattutto especially /above all
 che ne dici? what do you say?
 dico a tutti I tell everybody
 aprire to open
 in bocca al lupo! good luck!
 [= in the wolf's mouth]

Attività

Connetti

Match the words and expressions below to build sentences.

io	sentite	tanto.
tu	aprono	a casa.
lui	partiamo	l'e-mail.
lei	sente	nostalgia.
Lei	dormo	domani, signora?
noi	apre	per Bologna.
voi	parte	tante emozioni.
loro	dormi	la porta.

Chiedi in classe e rispondi

Ask and answer, in turns, what these people are doing.

Use these questions: *Che cosa fa [lui/lei/Alessio]? Che cosa fanno [loro]? Che cosa fai [tu]?*



questa ragazza ...
dormire



Alessio...
sentire musica



queste persone...
partire



tu... aprire

Trova e scrivi

Find all the forms of verb *dire* to say or to tell on these two pages, and write them down. Can you be the first to find them all?

Che cosa dici?

Ascolta

These radio DJs, Luca and Dino, are discussing Diana's interview.

LUCA: Che cosa dici di Diana?

DINO: Che cosa dico? Personalmente, dico che è una ragazza coraggiosa.

LUCA: E che cosa dicono i fans?

DINO: In generale, loro dicono Diana è forte, proprio forte...



immagina che...

scenario

Listen to these people visiting Galleria Ferrari, the Ferrari Museum in Maranello. Some of them are looking at the sports car exhibition and some are trying out the videogames.



2 LILIANA: Ti piace questo museo, Giuseppe?

GIUSEPPE: Oh, sì. Che bello! Che grande!

ALICE: Che noia! Andiamo a casa presto, mamma?

LILIANA: No, è ancora presto. Diamo un'occhiata in giro prima, dai, Alice.

GIUSEPPE: Che lagna!

LUCIA: Che spaccone!

LILIANA: Che maleducati! Bambini, basta, per favore.

1 CHIARA: Che forte! Mi piace questa galleria. È il museo più divertente del mondo!

MARCO: Che museo! Guarda, un modello di Ferrari d'epoca.

CHIARA: Che batticuore! Chiamo subito mio papà.

MARCO: Sono le cinque di sera. Non è notte in Australia?

CHIARA: Che scema! È vero. In Australia, tutti dormono adesso.

MARCO: Secondo me, anche tu dormi, Chiara!

CHIARA: Che spiritoso!

3 LUANA: Ehi, voi due, che fate?

ALESSANDRO: Giochiamo a un nuovo videogioco: è un simulatore di guida Ferrari. Che forte!

MICHELE: Attento, Alessandro, attento! Oh, che disastro! Sei già 'game over', vedi?

ALESSANDRO: Che peccato! È molto difficile, però...

LUANA: Dai, tocca a me adesso.

ALESSANDRO: Tocca a te? Una ragazza con un simulatore di guida? Che assurdo!

LUANA: Che idiota! Hai paura di fare brutta figura, forse?

Check out the video on the Esplora! DVD



che always has the hard *kay* sound in Italian.

For example: *che bello!*

Without *h*, *ce* and *ci* have the soft sounds *chay* and *chee*. For example: *mi piace*.

You'll get used to these sounds as you practise reading and listening to Italian. Find examples in this scenario, while you watch the DVD and listen to the podcast at www.esplora.com.au

When you are talking about feminine nouns that end in *-a* or *-e*, you have to remember to use the feminine form of the adjective [describing word]. For example, *che bello!* [m] becomes *che bella!* when describing something feminine.

Attività

Immagina

Imagine you are visiting the *Galleria Ferrari* in Maranello. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have in one of these scenarios:

- you love cars, but your friend knows nothing about them ... tell them all you know [they are interested]!
- you hate cars and you're bored, but you want to be there with your car-mad friend, who you want to impress by being interested



Riflettiamo

- 1 Have you been to a museum like *Galleria Ferrari*, which is dedicated to cars or transport?
- 2 What kinds of 'special interest' museums do you know about in your city or local area? Is there one you really enjoyed visiting?

che forte! how cool!

che batticuore! how awesome!

che scema! how silly!

che spiritoso! how funny!

che bello! how beautiful!

che grande! how big!

che noia! how boring!

che lagna! what a whinger!

che spaccone! what a showoff!

che maleducati! how rude!

che disastro! what a disaster!

che peccato! what a pity!

tocca a me my turn

tocca a te your turn

che assurdo! how ridiculous!

che idiota! what an idiot!

Attività

Guarda e scrivi

Look at these pictures and write exclamations you could use in these situations.



1 fare una grigliata



2 guardare film dell'orrore



3 giocare a football



4 aprire i regali



5 aprire le e-mail



6 studiare per scuola

Chiedi e di'

Ask classmates what they think about some famous people. Give your opinion too! Use these expressions:

Che pensi di...?

Che dici di...?

To answer, use an exclamation and expressions like:

Mi piace perché..., mi piacciono perché..., secondo me..., per me...

For example:

Che dici di Kylie Minogue?

Che brava! Secondo me, canta benissimo!



For more expressions visit www.esplora.com.au

Formula Uno in Italia

Formula One car racing is a really popular sport in Italy – the home of the famous Ferrari! Italy has two famous car racing circuits: one in Imola, in the region of Bologna, and one in Monza, near Milan.

The Imola racetrack is usually just called *Imola*. But the circuit's real name is *Autodromo Enzo e Dino Ferrari* – named after the 'fathers' of the famous cars. Imola has been a centre for speed for more than 2000 years! The Imola race circuit can be traced back to 80 BC when it was an amphitheatre, and two-wheeled chariots races were held there.



Gran Premio

The other big racing circuit is in Monza, near Milan. Monza is where the Italian Grand Prix *Gran Premio* is held around September every year. The circuit is officially called *Autodromo Nazionale di Monza* but the locals just call it *il parco*. Do an internet search to find images of the Monza Circuit.

Su e Giù



Su: Apart from holding the *Gran Premio*, *il parco di Monza* is always busy with other racing events held during the year. The Milanese also go there for picnics or barbeques, bike riding, jogging or just a break from city life. Some people travel up to two hours just to spend the afternoon there.



Giù: In 1994 the three-time world champion, Brazilian Ayrton Senna, died as a result of a terrible crash at the *Gran Premio* at Imola. Motor racing is a dangerous sport where drivers risk serious injury or even death. For this reason, authorities strictly monitor safety standards at the official race circuits.



The Ferrari symbol is the prancing horse *il cavallino rampante*.

The official story is that Count Baracca, a famous World War I airforce pilot, used *il cavallino rampante* to bring him luck on his flying missions. One day Count Baracca's parents met up with Enzo Ferrari after he'd won a car race. They suggested Enzo should use the same mascot that had brought luck to their famous war hero son. Apparently, Enzo felt honoured, and took up their idea. Since then *il cavallino rampante* is recognised all over the world as the symbol of Ferrari.

esplor@

Many international authorities are concerned about the Imola race circuit. Some oppose it being used for the international Grand Prix motor race because of the track's age and condition.

Attività

Do some research on *Formula Uno* and answer these questions in Italian:

- C'è il Gran Premio di San Marino il prossimo anno? Quando?
- Quando è esattamente il Gran Premio di Monza?
- Dov'è il Gran Premio in Australia?
- Quando è in Australia?
- Quante nazioni ospitano il Gran Premio di Formula Uno?

Search 'formula uno' or 'formula one motor racing' in an internet search engine.

Lo sport in Italia

In addition to *Formula Uno* Italians love watching and playing many different sports. The most popular are soccer, basketball, volleyball, water polo, cycling, skiing and athletics. Italians are also represented internationally in other sports like swimming, tennis and rugby.

Lo sport a scuola

Italian schools place great importance on academic achievement [like poetry, art and essay-writing competitions]. Students go home for lunch at around 1 p.m. most days and cannot rely on schools to offer activities such as sport, drama and music. When students have particular talents, they usually sign up with sports clubs or other organisations for training or to participate in competitive sports and festivals.

The word *sport* is used in many languages all over the world. It comes from the Latin word *deportare*, which can mean to go out of the city. This was when people had to go out of the ancient towns for leisure and games. In the 14th century the English, under French influence, created the word *disport* to talk about leisure activities. Later, it was shortened to *sport*.



Riflettiamo

- 1 What are the most popular sports in your country? What sports do you like the most, and why?
- 2 How many hours of physical education do you have every week at school? What about sporting teams? Do you belong to a sporting team?

Attività

Do any sporting teams you know use one of these animals as their mascot or trademark?

il cane dog	il cavallino little horse
il gatto cat	il topo mouse
il coniglio rabbit	il cigno swan
il koala koala	il canguro kangaroo
il pesce fish	il leone lion
l'emù emu	l'aquila eagle
l'elefante elephant	il falco hawk

Gli animali 'sportivi'

Many sporting teams use an animal as their mascot. Here are some for Italian soccer teams:

- Juventus, based in Turin, uses *la zebra* because the team's colours are black and white.
- Inter Milan uses *la biscia* the viper – the symbol of the city of Milan.

Progetto

If you'd been Enzo Ferrari would you have used *il cavallino rampante* as your mascot? Let's imagine Enzo Ferrari never got the idea from Count Baracca! So now you can design a different 'animal mascot' logo for the Ferrari racing team. Use a native animal of your country or another animal you think would be right for the Ferrari team. Design a new logo [draw it or use a computer graphic design program]. Also try to think up an Italian slogan and name for your new mascot.

mag
La rivista



grammatica

-ire verbs

Verbs ending in **-ire** have two regular conjugation patterns. Here's the pattern we used in this chapter. The other will be explained in *Capitolo 16*.

dormire	<i>to sleep</i>
[io] dormo	<i>I sleep</i>
[tu] dormi	<i>you sleep</i>
[lui/lei] dorme	<i>he/she sleeps</i>
[Lei] dorme [fml]	<i>you sleep</i>
[noi] dormiamo	<i>we sleep</i>
[voi] dormite [pl]	<i>you sleep</i>
[loro] dormono	<i>they sleep</i>

Some common **-ire** verbs that follow this pattern are:

partire	<i>to leave</i>
sentire	<i>to hear/to feel</i>
aprire	<i>to open</i>

dire [to say/to tell]

dire *to say* or *to tell* is an irregular **-ire** verb so it has its own special pattern.

[io] dico	<i>I say/tell</i>
[tu] dici	<i>you say/tell</i>
[lui/lei] dice	<i>he/she says/tells</i>
[Lei] dice [fml]	<i>you say/tell</i>
[noi] diciamo	<i>we say/tell</i>
[voi] dite [pl]	<i>you say/tell</i>
[loro] dicono	<i>they say/tell</i>

To talk about playing sport you use **giocare a** *to play*:

giocare a calcio	<i>to play soccer</i>
giocare a basket	<i>to play basketball</i>
giocare a pallavolo	<i>to play volleyball</i>
giocare a tennis	<i>to play tennis</i>

For other activities you use **fare** *to do* or *to make*:

fare ciclismo	<i>cycling</i>
fare atletica	<i>athletics</i>
fare ginnastica	<i>gymnastics</i>
fare nuoto/ nuotare	<i>swimming</i>
fare pallanuoto	<i>water polo</i>

che...!

To express your amazement or disappointment in Italian you often use the word **che** followed by an adjective or noun, or both together. **che** is similar in meaning to the English words *What...!* and *How...!* Here are some examples:

che + adjective or noun

che bello! <i>how beautiful!</i>	che brutto! <i>how ugly!</i>
che forte! <i>how cool!</i>	che paura! <i>what fear!</i>
che emozione! <i>how exciting!</i>	che schifezza! <i>how disgusting!</i>
che esplosivo! <i>how explosive!</i>	che noia! <i>how boring!</i>
che interessante! <i>how interesting!</i>	
che idiota! <i>what an idiot!</i>	che scemo! <i>what a fool!</i>
che storia! <i>how cool!</i>	che tragedia! <i>what a tragedy!</i>
che successo! <i>what a success!</i>	che figura! <i>how embarrassing!</i>

che + adjective and noun

che bel ragazzo! <i>what a good looking boy!</i>
che brutto ragazzo! <i>what an ugly boy!</i>
che bella ragazza! <i>what a beautiful girl!</i>
che bel gioco! <i>what a great game!</i>
che brutta ragazza! <i>what an ugly girl!</i>
che brutto gioco! <i>what a lame game!</i>
che bel posto! <i>what a beautiful place!</i>
che brutto posto! <i>what an awful place!</i>



Vocabolario



Riflettiamo

Look at **dire** to say or to tell and all its conjugations. Most of the verb **dire** is based on an ancient Latin word **dicere**. Think about these English words: **dictation, dictate, dictator** ... how do you think they relate to **dire**?

A good way of remembering the Italian *che* exclamations is to use them every day when you write SMS, emails, notes and in your diary, if you have one.

aprire dire dormire partire	to open to say/to tell to sleep to leave/to depart	che lagna! che maleducati! che noia! che peccato! che scema! che spaccone! che spiritoso! che storia!	what a whinger! how rude! how boring! what a pity! how silly! what a showoff! how funny! how cool!
dite [pl] dorme dormi dormiamo dormite [pl] dormono partiamo partite [pl] parto senti sentiamo sentite [pl] sento	you say he/she sleeps you sleep we sleep you sleep they sleep we leave/depart you leave/depart I leave/depart you feel we listen you listen I feel	l'atletica il basket il calcio il ciclismo la ginnastica il nuoto la pallanuoto la pallavolo	athletics basketball soccer cycling gymnastics swimming water polo volleyball
dico dici dice dice [fm] diciamo dite [pl] dicono	I say/tell you say/tell he/she says/tells you say/tell we say/tell you say/tell they say/tell	a tutta velocità apri le orecchie è ora di in bocca al lupo!	at full speed open your ears [listen] it's time to good luck [in the wolf's mouth, expression wishing good luck]
che assurdo! che batticuore! che bello! che disastro! che forte! che grande! che idiota!	how ridiculous! how awesome! how beautiful! what a disaster! how cool! how big! what an idiot!	motore piloti potenza prima di una gara qua la mano sentite Sono stufa!	motor racing car drivers power before a competition gimme five listen I'm sick of it!



Ultima fermata

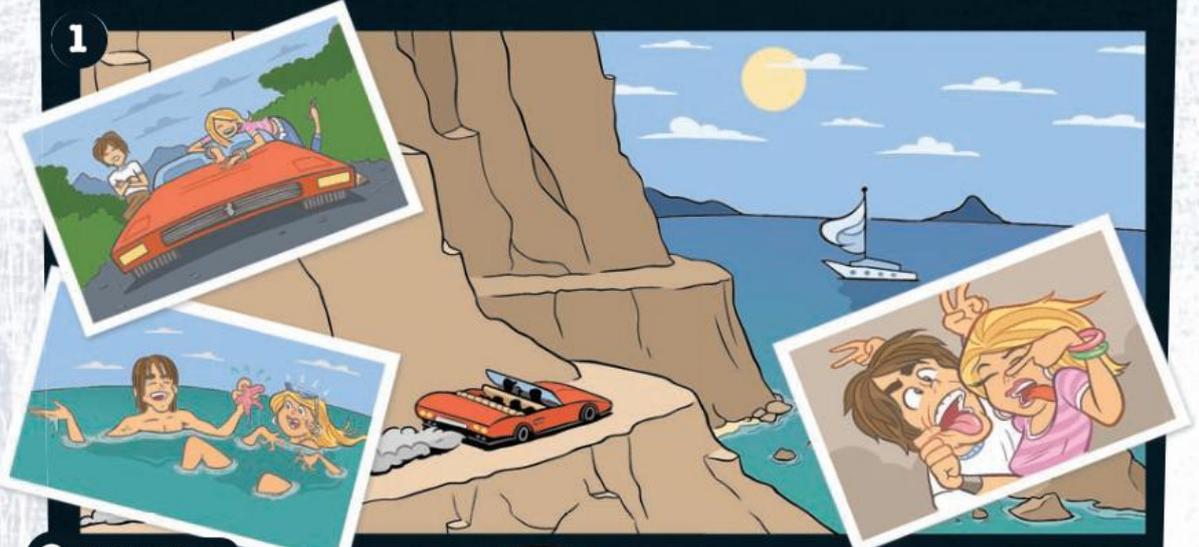


In this chapter you will learn:

- to use some **-ire** verbs like **capire**
- to express preferences
- to make suggestions
- about holidays in Italy

Zooming down the coast in Cristian's red Ferrari is really fun for Chiara and Marco. But will the mood last? Marco is beginning to think about what his father will say when they get home. After all their adventures together, are they ready for a reality check?

1



2

Più tardi, a una fermata al mare...



3

Il gelato... la Ferrari... Marco! Ma...



4

Verso casa...



pointata

quindici...

5 Finalmente a casa di Marco, a Roma...



Ragazzi, 21 giorni che siete via... lo capisco bene che alla vostra età... Ma che spavento!

Non capite i rischi di andare in giro, così? E non una telefonata, un'e-mail, un SMS per... giorni!

Va beh. Finiamo qui con le prediche... per ora!

6 What animal is represented in Marco's tattoo?



Capisco papà, è tutta colpa mia...

Signor Cosentin, mi dispiace. È anche colpa MIA...

Chiara, grazie al cielo per tua cugina Laura! Mi chiama sempre per dire dove siete, cosa fate e con chi!

www.esplora.com.au



E tu, Marco, tu ringrazia il tuo amico Max! È un bravo ragazzo! Anche lui è preoccupato...

Dai, la predica finisce qui! Secondo me, i ragazzi capiscono adesso, vero?

Sì, capiamo. Scusate tanto!



I 'NUOVI EROI' a casa, finalmente! Marco, ecco la tua Vespa! Andiamo, dai! Siamo in ritardo per Fedè!

Che cosa? FEDERICO?

Continua...

spedisco I [will] send
 suggerisco I suggest
 preferisco I prefer
 capisci you understand
 capisce she understands
 preferite [pl] you prefer
 l'ultimo the latest
 quasi quasi maybe
 io capisco I understand
 alla vostra età at your age
 che spavento! what a fright!
 capite [pl] you understand
 in giro around
 finiamo we finish
 le prediche preaching
 colpa mia my fault
 grazie al cielo thank heavens
 tu ringrazia you thank
 finisce ends, finishes
 capiscono they understand
 capiamo we understand

vero o falso?

- 1 Chiara spedisce le foto domani.
- 2 Cristian suggerisce di mangiare un gelato.
- 3 Marco preferisce andare a casa presto.
- 4 Per Cristian, i ragazzi non capiscono la situazione.



Riflettiamo

Do you have a digital camera? Do you usually take many pictures and have you ever sent photos over the internet?

pratica



Che cosa preferisci?

Ascolta

Cristian's red Ferrari is parked at the beach so everyone can see! As often happens, people stand around admiring his car. Listen to what they are saying.



Riflettiamo

What special products, cities and highlights of your country do you really like? What would you miss if you were away for a long time? Share your thoughts with the class. What do you all have in common?

1 Che bella! Mi piace questa Ferrari rossa. Onestamente, mi piacciono tutte le Ferrari rosse.

Beh, io **preferisco** le automobili tedesche...

Che cosa? Tu **preferisci** le auto tedesche? Non **capisco**...

Perché non **capisci**? Che cosa c'è da capire? **I gusti** sono gusti.

Figurati! Tutti **preferiscono** le automobili sportive italiane. Non c'è **confronto**.

Di **motori**, tu capisci zero. **Pure** mia nonna **capisce** di più. Quindi, non parlare **a vanvera**!

Che spaccone!

2 Guardate, che auto! **Voi capite** un pò di motori?

Ma va! Noi due? No, non **capiamo** niente di meccanica. Siamo senza **speranza**!

Questa Ferrari è molto bella però, **quasi quasi** spedisco una fotografia via telefonino a mia cugina. Lei capisce tutto di motori.

Veramente? Che idea! **Spediamo** una foto anche noi agli amici a casa.

3 Che cosa **preferite**? Le Ferrari o le Lamborghini?

È difficile... Personalmente, preferisco le Lamborghini.

Mmm, non lo so. Mio papà preferisce le Lamborghini per l'eleganza. Per me, tutte e due sono eccezionali. Non mi piace questa Ferrari in particolare, però.

Sì sì, sei solo **invidioso**!



Attività

Trova e rifletti

Have a look at what the people at the beach were saying about the Ferrari. Find where the verbs *preferire* and *capire* are used. Can you work out how these verbs are conjugated? Check *Grammatica* on page 150.

Coniuga

Look at the explanation about the *-ire* verbs that use the *isc* pattern. Then write out the conjugations of these four verbs:

suggerire to suggest

unire to unite

pulire to clean

garantire to guarantee

Use highlighters or texta to make sure the endings stand out... Keep the list somewhere handy so you can use it to learn the patterns.

Scrivi a coppie

Write sentences about the following people, using *-ire* verbs with the *-isc* pattern. Follow the cues given.



1 Il ragazzo -
suggerire



2 Tu - spedire
un'e-mail

Noi - capire l'italiano

Voi - preferire la pizza

Lui - pulire la camera

Loro - garantire il lavoro

Rispondi e discuti in classe

Prepare a presentation that includes the questions below and your answers. Use PowerPoint or Movie Maker or create a poster, including images to match the questions. Then discuss your presentations in class.

Capisci la matematica a scuola?

Preferisci l'italiano o la matematica?

Che cosa preferisci mangiare: gli spaghetti o i maccheroni?

Preferisci la televisione o la radio?

Spedisci tante e-mail ogni giorno?

Spedisci più e-mail o SMS?

Pulisci in casa? O tua mamma pulisce?

Finisci sempre i compiti in tempo?



For more expressions visit
www.esplora.com.au

The *-isc* followed by an *-o* is a hard sound *eesk*, for example, *capisco* I understand. But when it's followed by *i* or *e* it is a soft sound *eesh*, for example, *capisci* you understand. Find some other examples [there are lots!] in the conversations in *Pratica*, *Che cosa preferisci?* on the opposite page.

preferisco I prefer
preferisci you prefer
capisco I understand
capisci you understand
i gusti tastes
preferiscono they prefer
confronto comparison
motori engines
pure also
capisce he/she understands
a vanvera without thinking
voi capite [pl] you understand
capiamo we understand
speranza hope
quasi quasi maybe, I've half a mind to
spediamo we send
preferite [pl] you prefer
invidioso [m] envious

immagina che...

scenario

Max is online with his friends discussing the next summer holidays. July and August are the busiest holiday months in Italy so they'd better book early if they want accommodation.



Max

Per le vacanze, io suggerisco di andare al mare, ma mia cugina Luisa suggerisce di andare in montagna. Non mi piace la montagna! Che suggerite voi?



Roberto

Io preferisco il mare! Spiaggia, sole, gelato!



Luisa

Io e Cristian suggeriamo il mare all'estero, ma forse costa tanto... Mamma e papà suggeriscono la Toscana: mare e montagna insieme...

Invia



Marco

Io suggerisco di stare vicino a una città d'arte, con tanti posti da visitare e anche con il mare vicino...



Max

Invia

Marco suggerisce bene, benissimo! In città grandi ci sono tante discoteche anche...



Claudia

Sentite, mia mamma suggerisce di andare a Riccione. C'è il mare e ci sono molte città d'arte vicino... e poi, c'è anche 'Mirabilandia', il parco acquatico. Vi piace l'idea?

Invia



Attività

When *suggerire* is followed by a verb [i.e. what it is suggested you do], you must use *di* as well:

suggerisco di andare al mare

I suggest going to the beach



Riflettiamo

- Where do you usually go for holidays? Where would you really like to go but haven't been to yet?
- July and August are the busiest holiday months in Italy. What about in your country?

suggerisco I suggest
al mare at/to the beach
suggerisce she suggests
in montagna in the mountains
suggerite [pl] you suggest
spiaggia beach
sole sun
suggeriamo we suggest
all'estero overseas
suggeriscono they suggest
vi piace [pl] you like

Completa

Complete these people's suggestions, following this example for the first picture:

Io suggerisco di mangiare le lasagne.



io... mangiare



Chiara... bere



noi... dormire



loro... controllare



tu... leggere



Max... andare



io e Federico... andare



questo ragazzo... diventare

Suggerisci

Suggest a solution for these problems! [Remember to use *ti suggerisco* if you are talking to one person, or *vi suggerisco* if talking to more than one person.]

Ho un test di italiano domani...

Abbiamo mal di denti...

Ho fame, tanta fame...

Non capiamo questa parola in italiano...

Mi piace questo film in TV, ma è molto tardi...

Immagina

Imagine you are on the phone with a friend. Make suggestions to solve these problems. In pairs, write and perform the conversation you would have in one of these scenarios:

- you have a *brufolo* pimple on your face and you have a date with somebody you have a crush on
- you have a maths test tomorrow and can't understand the last things you covered in class

Le vacanze italiane in estate

Italian summer holidays last for three months from mid-June until mid-September. But Italians don't have as many long weekends and term breaks as Australia and New Zealand.

One of the reasons for the long summer holiday is because it is very hot during the summer months. Schools are not air-conditioned so to have classes during summer would not be possible.

Most offices, shops and factories close in August, because with so many people away there's no point staying open!



Did you know that all marathons are the same length [42.195 kilometres]? If it's any other length, it isn't a marathon.



Le vacanze a Ostia Lido

Lido di Ostia is the beach that's closest to Rome. It's just half an hour by train from the city centre using the *Roma-Ostia Lido trenino* The Rome-Ostia Lido 'little train'. Because it's so close to Rome Lido di Ostia is always crowded. Apart from locals, many tourists come to see this famous beach.

Attività

Fai un sondaggio

Perform a survey in groups and present the results in Italian.

- Dove preferite andare in vacanza: al mare, in montagna o in campagna?
- Che cosa preferite fare in vacanza: dormire, visitare o giocare?
- Come preferite viaggiare: in auto, in treno o in aereo?
- Preferite stare in un hotel o stare in un campeggio?

esplor

La maratona Roma-Ostia



Ostia is famous in Italy for another reason – *la maratona Roma-Ostia*. This marathon race was started in 1974, and is the oldest marathon in Italy. Every year almost 7000 people participate. Other famous marathons in Italy take place in Milano, Roma, Siracusa and Pisa.

Attività

Rispondi

Are any marathons or well-known sporting events held in your city or near where you live? Which ones do you enjoy watching or participating in?

Le feste pubbliche

These are the main festivals and events in the Italian calendar:

1° gennaio Capodanno	15 agosto giorno dell'Assunzione/Ferragosto
6 gennaio Epifania	1° novembre giorno dei Santi
marzo-aprile Domenica di Pasqua	2 novembre giorno dei Morti/Anniversario Vittoria Prima Guerra Mondiale
Lunedì di Pasqua	8 dicembre Immacolata Concezione della Vergine Maria
25 aprile giorno della Liberazione	25 dicembre Natale
1° maggio giorno dei Lavoratori	26 dicembre Santo Stefano
2 giugno anniversario della Repubblica Italiana	

There are other holidays that are only celebrated in specific regions.

15 agosto, giorno speciale!

Ferragosto is an important summer celebration in Italy held around August 15. Almost everything [except *gelaterie*, cafés and restaurants] is closed, and most people are away from home. August 15 officially celebrates the Feast of the Assumption of the Virgin Mary. But in ancient Roman times it was the highlight of a pagan festival to honour the emperor Augustus. These days Ferragosto refers to the week around August 15, as well as the day itself. There are beach parties, food and dance celebrations in the mountains, and fireworks in the big cities. Lots of food, wine and craft fairs are held in the *piazze* of many cities and towns at this time.

How fast can you work out in which seasons [think Northern Hemisphere!] the Italian public holidays take place? You have already studied the seasons in Italy [they are all reversed]. The first person to match each public holiday with the right season, wears the badge of **esperto d'italiano**. You can play in groups to save time and share the... title!

Attività

Crea

Create a multimedia, PowerPoint presentation or poster describing how a special day or event is celebrated in your country. If appropriate, describe the public part of the events and also what you usually do with your friends and family.

Progetto

Imagine you have just been on holiday at an Italian seaside resort during Ferragosto. Research some Ferragosto traditions and present your findings in a PowerPoint presentation or as a poster.

@mag La rivista

Su



Su: There are lots of fantastic seafood restaurants in Ostia, and even more ice-cream shops. They sell creamy and delicious gelati that Rome is famous for.



Riflettiamo

What do you think about the Italian summer holiday 'system'? Would you like to have three months' holiday in summer... but with less holiday time during the year?



Traditional clam dish

grammatica

-ire verbs: the other pattern

Regular *-ire* verbs have two patterns of conjugation. You studied the first *-ire* pattern in *Capitolo quattordici*. [You can revise this on page 140.]

The second *-ire* verb conjugation needs **isc** to be added in front of the endings for *io*, *tu*, *lui/lei/Lei* and *loro*.

capire *to understand* is one of these *-ire* verbs. [It's a very good one to know when learning Italian!]

[io] cap isco	<i>I understand</i>
[tu] cap isci	<i>you understand</i>
[lui/lei] cap isce	<i>he/she understands</i>
[Lei] cap isce [fml]	<i>you understand</i>
[noi] cap iamo	<i>we understand</i>
[voi] cap ite [pl]	<i>you understand</i>
[loro] cap iscono	<i>they understand</i>

Some useful expressions using **capire** are:

Capisci, o no?
Do you understand or not?

Certo che capisco!
Of course I understand!

Capisco.
I see/I understand.

Non capisce niente.
He/She doesn't understand anything.

Other common *-ire* verbs that follow this *-isc* pattern are:

finire	<i>to finish</i>
suggerire	<i>to suggest</i>
spedire	<i>to send/to mail</i>
pulire	<i>to clean</i>

to say what you prefer

The verb **preferire** *to prefer* is also an *-ire* verb using the **isc** pattern. It is used in many expressions to say what you prefer or would like.

[io] prefer isco	<i>I prefer</i>
[tu] prefer isci	<i>you prefer</i>
[lui/lei] prefer isce	<i>he/she prefers</i>
[Lei] prefer isce [fml]	<i>you prefer</i>
[noi] prefer iamo	<i>we prefer</i>
[voi] prefer ite [pl]	<i>you prefer</i>
[loro] prefer iscono	<i>they prefer</i>

preferire is often used with *o/oppure* meaning *or*.

Preferisci il mare o la montagna?
Do you prefer the sea or the mountains?

Preferite la pizza oppure gli spaghetti?
Do you prefer pizza or spaghetti?

To say what you prefer to do, **preferire** is simply followed by the infinitive of the verb [what you prefer to do]. This is like using the expressions *mi piace* and *vorrei*:

Preferisco mangiare la pizza.
I prefer eating pizza.

Loro preferiscono giocare a tennis.
They prefer playing tennis.

Chiara preferisce andare in Vespa.
Chiara prefers going on a Vespa.

To express your preferences you can also use *mi piace* and *mi piacciono* with the expression *di più* *more/better* :

Mi piace di più il mare.
I like the sea better.

Mi piacciono di più le canzoni in inglese.
I like English songs better.

to make suggestions

To make suggestions, you can use the verb **suggerire**:

[io] sugger isco	<i>I suggest</i>
[tu] sugger isci	<i>you suggest</i>
[lui/lei] sugger isce	<i>he/she suggests</i>
[Lei] sugger isce [fml]	<i>you suggest</i>
[noi] sugger iamo	<i>we suggest</i>
[voi] sugger ite [pl]	<i>you suggest</i>
[loro] sugger iscono	<i>they suggest</i>



In the comic of *Pantata quindici*, find examples of the *isc* conjugation pattern. From the example, work out the infinitives.

As you can see, the specific endings, apart from the *isc*, are the same as the other *-ire* conjugation. Check the *Grammatica* to see the similarity.

Pay particular attention to the pronunciation of the cluster *isc*:

- before the vowels *-i* and *-e*, *isc* has a soft sound: *shee* and *shay*
- before the vowel *-o*, *isc* has a hard sound: *sko*

suggerire is simply followed by the noun [the thing] you are suggesting:

Suggerisco la spiaggia per oggi.
I suggest the beach for today.

Lei suggerisce una pausa.
She suggests a break.

Suggeriamo una vacanza.
We suggest a holiday.

When you want to suggest doing something, you need to put *di* before the infinitive of the verb [the action you are suggesting]:

Che cosa suggerite di mangiare?
What do you suggest eating?

Loro suggeriscono di fare una vacanza.
They suggest having a holiday.

Suggeriamo di comprare una cartina.
We suggest buying a map.

In Italian, you can also use other expressions to make suggestions, like in English. The most common expressions use the verbs *dire* to say and *pensare* to think in this way:

che ne dici di...?
what do you say about...?

che ne dite di...? [pl]
what do you say about...?

che ne pensi di...?
what do you think of...?

che ne pensate di...? [pl]
what do you think of...?

The *ne* means *of/about it* and is used in Italian to make the suggestion stronger:

Che ne dici di fare una vacanza?
What do you say about having a holiday?

Che ne pensi di mangiare una pizza?
What do you think about having a pizza?

Vocabolario

(io) capisco (tu) capisci (lui/lei) capisce (Lei) capisce [fml] (noi) capiamo (voi) capite [pl] (loro) capiscono	I understand you understand he/she understands you understand we understand you understand they understand
(io) finisco (tu) finisci (lui/lei) finisce (Lei) finisce [fml] noi finiamo voi finite [pl] loro finiscono	I finish you finish he/she finishes you finish we finish you finish they finish
(io) suggerisco (tu) suggerisci (lui/lei) suggerisce (Lei) suggerisce [fml] (noi) suggeriamo (voi) suggerite [pl] (loro) suggeriscono	I suggest you suggest he/she suggests you suggest we suggest you suggest they suggest
(io) preferisco (tu) preferisci (lui/lei) preferisce (Lei) preferisce [fml] (noi) preferiamo	I prefer you prefer he/she prefers you prefer we prefer

(voi) preferite [pl] (loro) preferiscono	you prefer they prefer
mi piace di più mi piacciono di più	I like (it) better, prefer I like (them) better, prefer
che ne dici di...? che ne dite di...? [pl] che ne pensi di...? che ne pensate di...? [pl] vi piace? [pl]	what do you say about...? what do you say about...? what do you think of...? what do you think of...? do you like?
all'estero il mare la montagna il sole la spiaggia	overseas sea mountains sun beach
a vanvera che mi succede?	without thinking what's happening to me?
(è) colpa mia grazie al cielo! pure quasi quasi...	(it's) my fault thank goodness! also maybe, I've half a mind to...

Dov'è Marco?

In this chapter you will learn:

- to use the verb **venire** to come
- to use the ending **-issimo**
- some expressions like **super** and **mega**
- about famous Roman **piazze**

1 Is Chiara finally going to see Federico? The kids are now back in Rome after their travels around Italy. Chiara's arranged to meet Fede at the Spanish Steps, in the heart of Rome. Marco can't be bothered going. He's tired, but he says he'll meet up with Chiara and Fede later for a gelato... do you think he will?



puntata

sedici...

5 Dopo il concerto...



6 Più tardi, a casa di Marco...



8 Più tardi, verso una nuova avventura...



Continua...

Verò o falso?

- 1 Fede è alla Fontana di Trevi.
- 2 Gli Explora vengono in Australia per un concerto.
- 3 Secondo Max, Fede è un bravissimo cantante.
- 4 Chiara va via con Federico in Vespa.



Riflettiamo

Have you ever heard about or seen pictures of the Spanish Steps? Why are they famous?

carissimi [pl] dearest ones
 venite [pl] you come
 grandissimo great
 indovina guess
 veniamo we come
 vengono they come
 viene he's coming
 spero I hope
 vuole he wants
 fare il misterioso to be mysterious
 devo andare I have to go
 che fretta! what's the hurry!
 vengo I come
 veniamo we come
 vieni! come!
 chi diavolo è? who the heck is it?
 voglio I want
 nessuno anybody
 stanco morto dead tired

pratica



Vieni o no? 

Ascolta

Listen to the kids' voicemail messages about the *Explora* concert in Piazza di Spagna.



Ciao! Sono Fedel! Ehi...
Claudia, vieni o no?
È **tardissimo!** Io sono
contentissimo per
concerto... anche
preoccupatissimo.
Ci vediamo!



Ciao **bellissimo!** Claudia
qui! Se vengo? Sì
che vengo! Sono da
Marco, qui vicino! Sono
contentissima anch'io! È
una **grandissima** notizia
il concerto. Fede, sei
fortissimo! Marco
viene?





Attività

Trova

Find all expressions in the voicemail messages that mean the same as the following:

<i>molto tardi</i>	<i>molto contento</i>
<i>molto grande</i>	<i>molto belli</i>
<i>molto contenta</i>	<i>molto stanco</i>
<i>molto forte</i>	

Cambia

Change these sentences using a form of **-issimo**. [Don't forget to use the correct form to match the gender and number.]

- Marco è molto paziente.*
- Chiara è molto noiosa.*
- Federico è molto bravo.*
- Laura è molto intelligente.*
- Gli Explora sono molto bravi.*
- Laura e Chiara sono molto contente.*
- Marco e Federico sono molto stanchi.*

Crea

Create an advertisement using superlatives and words such as **mega**, **extra** and **super**. Choose a product, and create some promotional material! Slap on lots of slogans in Italian stressing how really good/quick/beautiful etc. your product is.

Immagina

Imagine you are going to Explora's concert in Roma. Choose one of these scenarios, and write an SMS:

- you SMS Federico, to ask what time the concert is, who's going and whether he is happy about it
- you SMS Claudia, to ask where she is now, if she is going to the concert, and if Fede is happy about it

Notice all the words that end with **-issimo** in these voicemail messages. Check out the explanation about superlative adjectives in the Grammatica on page 160. Do you think these words sound stronger because they include **-issimo**?



Riflettiamo

What words or expressions do you use to explain that something is **REALLY** good... or bad... or fantastic etc.? Are these words similar to Italian ones? Can you just add something on to the end of a word in English like in Italian?



For more expressions visit www.esplora.com.au

- tardissimo very late
- contentissimo very happy
- preoccupatissimo very worried/preoccupied
- bellissimo beautiful
- grandissima great
- notizia news
- fortissimo great
- stanchissimo very tired
- in bocca al lupo good luck [in the wolf's mouth]



immagina che...

scenario

Federico and some friends are meeting up at different places in Roma to then go on to his concert in Piazza di Spagna.



3 In Piazza Bocca della Verità

ALESSANDRA: Dai, Nadia, è tardi!

NADIA: Vengo, vengo... che fretta!

ALESSANDRA: Fabio e Paolo sono in Piazza Navona e aspettano già.

NADIA: Alice viene?

ALESSANDRA: No, ma Marco viene, Max anche e... l'australiana.

NADIA: Chi?

ALESSANDRA: Chiara, l'amica australiana, viene da Melbourne!

NADIA: Che storia!

1 In Piazza di Spagna

CLAUDIA: Ciao, Federico! Come va?

FEDERICO: Ehi, ciao Claudia, va bene. Sono nervoso per il concerto, però.

CLAUDIA: Dove sono Chiara e Marco? Vengono anche loro oggi, vero?

FEDERICO: Sì, e anche Max viene...

CLAUDIA: Benissimo, allora! Un SMS: bene! Anche Paolo e Fabio vengono! Sono vicini.

2 In Piazza Navona

PAOLO: Ciao Fabio!

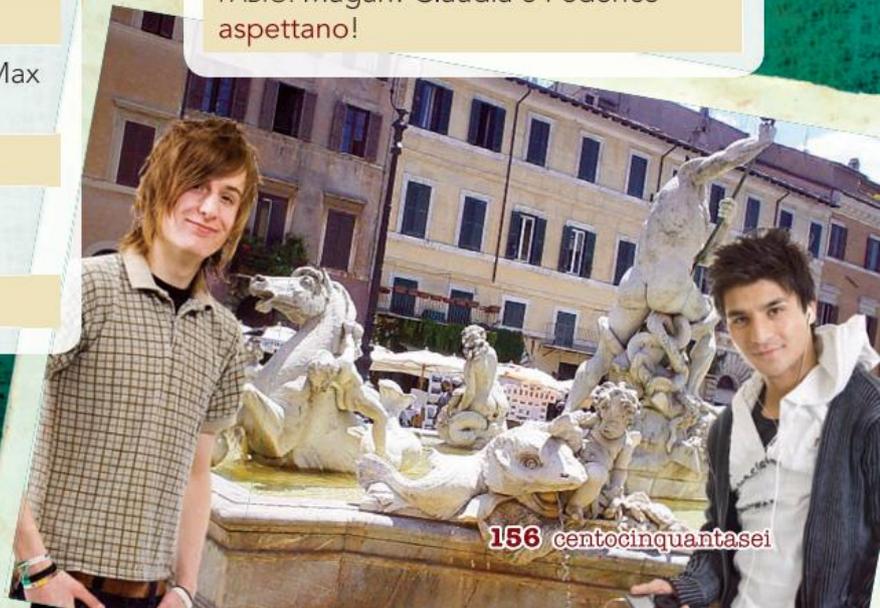
FABIO: Paolo! Sei in ritardo! E dov'è Alice? Viene oggi, o no?

PAOLO: No, Alice non viene, ma Alessandra e Nadia vengono.

FABIO: Va beh. Vengono ma... quando?

PAOLO: Presto, Fabio, presto. Guarda, un SMS di Alessandra... arrivano presto...

FABIO: Magari! Claudia e Federico aspettano!





The easiest way to ask a question in Italian is to 'inflect' the tone at the end of a sentence to make it into a question. It's the same in English: listen to the difference when you say *YOU think* and *You THINK?*



Riflettiamo

Have you heard about or seen any of these famous places in Roma? Which ones would you like to visit and why?

però though/however
 vengono [they] are coming
 viene [he] is coming
 aspettano [they] are waiting
 vengo [I] am coming
 che fretta! what a rush!
 già already
 da from



Attività

Trova e scrivi

Have a look in the **Grammatica** on page 160 to see how the verb **venire** to come is conjugated. Then find where parts of **venire** are used in the **Scenario**. Write them down, including the appropriate pronouns: **io, tu, lui, lei, noi, voi** or **loro**.

Usa e scrivi

Use the verb **venire** to write sentences about where these people come from. Follow this sample.



Lei viene da Sydney, in Australia



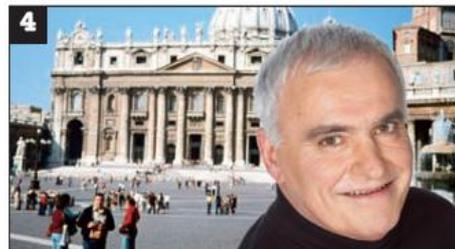
1 Melbourne



2 Firenze



3 Pompei



4 Roma



5 Parigi

Scegli in coppia

In pairs, choose one of the conversations in the **Scenario**, and act them out. Try to learn them by heart rather than just reading them.

Immagina

Imagine you are in a famous place in Roma, and you are going to Federico's concert. In pairs, write and perform a phone conversation you would have in one of these scenarios:

- you are in **Piazza di Spagna** and one of you is running late. You also discuss whether two other friends [name them] are coming as well
- you are at **La Fontana di Trevi** and your friend is in **Piazza Navona**. You call each other to decide who'll come to meet the other



Le piazze di Roma

Piazza Bocca della Verità

There are so many legends about la **Bocca della Verità** *the Mouth of Truth!* One story is that if you are a liar, and you put your hand into its mouth, your hand will be cut off. That's a legend now, but it used to actually happen! The ancient Romans punished criminals by getting them to put their hand in la **Bocca della Verità**. Someone would be hiding behind the statue, and when the criminal put their hand in... it was chopped off!

↑ Bocca della Verità

Piazza di Spagna

This **piazza** is now most famous for the 138 steps, the Spanish Steps, behind the **piazza**. The square was called **Piazza di Spagna** because the Spanish Embassy was, and still is, on the **piazza**. Today, **Piazza di Spagna** and the Spanish Steps are both a favourite spot for fashion shows, and as a location for magazine photo shoots.

↑ The Spanish Steps

esplor



↑ Piazza Navona in Roma

Piazza Navona

Originally built as a stadium for chariot races (which explains its oval shape), **Piazza Navona** has three beautiful fountains. People like to jump into the fountains on New Year's Eve or when they are celebrating soccer match victories!

↓ The Fountain of Neptune, Piazza Navona



PIAZZA
NAVONA
(STADIO DI DOMIZIANO)

Piazza San Pietro

St Peter's Square is in front of St Peter's Basilica, the most important church for Catholics, and the largest church in the world. **Piazza San Pietro** was designed by Michelangelo and is dedicated to Saint Peter, one of the Twelve Apostles. **Piazza San Pietro** is located in the Vatican City, an independent state within Rome. The Vatican is the administrative centre of the Roman Catholic Church for one billion Catholics all over the world. The Vatican has its own **euro** coins, and the official languages are Italian and Latin! Did you know... ATMs in the Vatican have instructions both in Italian and in Latin!

↑ Piazza San Pietro

Le piazze in Italia

In cities, towns and even small villages in Italy, *la piazza* is usually found in front of [or very close to] the church. *Le piazze* become meeting places, and in smaller communities they are the centre of town or village life. There are often cafés, small shops and restaurants on *la piazza*, and it's also the place for markets, fairs, concerts and community celebrations.



Riflettiamo

- 1 *la piazza* is not a religious place, so why do you think *piazze* in Italy are often close to a church?
- 2 Are there places like *piazze* in your community? Where do people meet together? What about for community celebrations?

Attività

Discuti

In class have a 'brainstorm' and try to name other famous squares around the world. See how many your class can come up with.

Scegli e crea

Choose a world-famous square you'd like to visit. Do some research on how it got its name, what it is used for, who goes there and any other interesting facts. Present your findings in PowerPoint, a poster, or make up a 'photo' album with images from the internet or magazines.

Progetto

Create a tourist guide booklet to visit a Roman *piazza*. Your booklet could be in an electronic format or made from paper and pictures. Here's a list of some well-known Roman *piazze*:

Piazza Barberini	Piazza del Campidoglio
Piazza Colonna	Piazza Farnese
Piazza della Minerva	Piazza del Popolo
Piazza del Quirinale	Piazza Venezia

For information type the name of the square, in Italian or English, into an internet search engine.

@mag

La rivista

Le sagre regionali



Italians love making the most of their open-air *piazze* for local fairs and exhibitions. The most common are called *sagre*, meaning festivals. *Sagre* are organised to celebrate foods, wines and regional products. There are also *sagre* to celebrate saints' days and music *sagre* [even rock music] to promote local bands. Each region and town has their own festivals throughout the year.



grammatica

venire da... [to come from...]

venire to come is another irregular verb with its own pattern.

[io] vengo	I come
[tu] vieni	you come
[lui/lei] viene	he/she comes
[Lei] viene [fml]	you come
[noi] veniamo	we come
[voi] venite [pl]	you come
[loro] vengono	they come

To say to come from... you use the preposition *da* in front of wherever someone comes from.

Vengo da Wellington.
I come from Wellington.

Tu vieni da Alice Springs?
Do you come from Alice Springs?

Noi veniamo da Mildura.
We come from Mildura.

Da dove vieni?
Where do you come from?

When you want to say that you come from a certain country, you need to change *da* by connecting it with the definite article for that country. For example, *l'Australia*, *l'Italia*, *la Spagna*, *il Giappone*, *la Svizzera*, *gli USA*.

da becomes: *dal* [da+ il], *dall'* [da+ l'], *dalla* [da+la], or *dagli* [da+ gli]:

Chiara viene dall'Australia.

Marco viene dall'Italia.

Noriko viene dal Giappone.

Dolores viene dalla Spagna.

Max viene dalla Svizzera.

Peter viene dagli USA.

You can find more countries in the *Vocabolario* on the next page.

Superlative adjectives: using -issimo and molto

In Italian to make adjectives stronger [a bit like the English *very*, *highly*, *extremely*, *really*], you can:

add **-issimo** to the end of the adjective. For example, **bellissimo**

or

put **molto** before the adjective. For example: **molto bello**.

The ending of **-issimo** changes according to the gender and number of the noun it is describing. Note the changes:

Marco è bellissimo.

Chiara è bellissima.

Marco e Chiara sono bellissimi.

Some adjectives ending in **-co**, **-ca** and **-go**, **-ga** [e.g. *stanco*, *ricco*, *largo*] need an **-h** inserted before **-issimo**. [This is so the hard **-k** sound is kept.]

stanco stanchissimo

ricca ricchissima

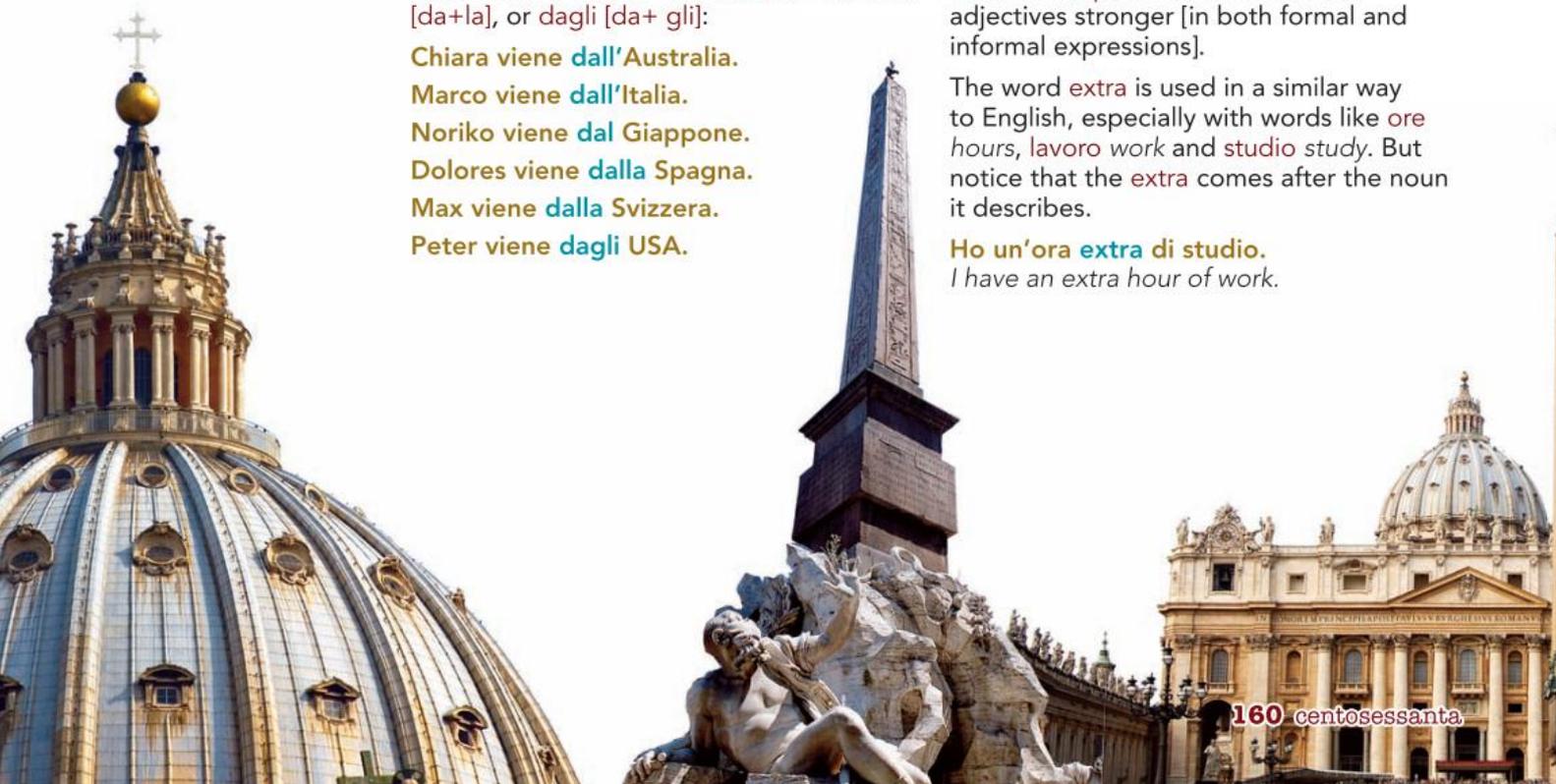
largo larghissimo

Sometimes Italians use words like *mega*, *extra* and *super* to make nouns and adjectives stronger [in both formal and informal expressions].

The word *extra* is used in a similar way to English, especially with words like *ore* hours, *lavoro* work and *studio* study. But notice that the *extra* comes after the noun it describes.

Ho un'ora extra di studio.

I have an extra hour of work.



Abbiamo bisogno di un giorno extra di lavoro.

We need an extra day of work.

The words **super** and **mega** usually go with nouns, and they can go before or after what they are describing.

Look at these four ways to say *This is great news!*

Questa è una notizia mega!

Questa è una mega notizia!

Questa è una notizia super!

Questa è una super notizia!

Some Italian words already contain **mega**, and many are used exactly as they are in English for example, **megabyte**, **megawatt**, but others you may need to guess.

megalomane *megalomaniac [power-hungry person!]*

megalitico *megalithic [Stone Age]*

megagalattico *fabulous*

Vocabolario

grandissimo [m]
bellissimi [pl]
benissimo [pl]
carissimi [pl]
contentissima [f]
contentissimo [m]
fortissimo [m]
grandissima [f]
stanchissimo [m]
stanco morto [m]
tardissimo [m]

great
very beautiful
very good/well
dearest ones
very happy
very happy
great
great
very tired
dead tired
very late

venire
[io] vengo
[tu] vieni
[lui/lei] viene
[Lei] viene [fml]
[noi] veniamo
[voi] venite [pl]
[loro] vengono

to come
I come
you come
he/she comes
you come
we come
you come
they come

dall'Australia
dal Giappone
dall'Italia

from Australia
from Japan
from Italy

dalla Spagna
dalla Svizzera
dagli USA

from Spain
from Switzerland
from the USA

l'Australia
la Cina
la Francia
la Germania
il Giappone
l'India
l'Indonesia
l'Italia
la Malesia
la Nuova Zelanda
la Spagna
la Svizzera
la Thailandia
gli USA

Australia
China
French
Germany
Japan
India
Indonesia
Italy
Malaysia
New Zealand
Spain
Switzerland
Thailand
USA

che fretta!

what's the hurry!
what's the rush!
who the heck is it?
guess...

chi diavolo è?
indovina...



i verbi

regular -are verbs

Here is an example of an **-are** verb:

abitare to live

io **abito**
tu **abiti**
lui/lei/Lei **abita**

noi **abitiamo**
voi **abitare**
loro **abitano**

abitare to live
aiutare to help
amare to love
arrivare to arrive, to get to
ascoltare to listen
aspettare to wait
ballare to dance
cantare to sing
cercare to look for
chiamare to call
comprare to buy
consigliare to advise
controllare to control, to check
costare to cost
creare to create
cucinare to cook

dimenticare to forget
diventare to become
entrare to enter, to go in
festeggiare to celebrate
giocare to play [a sport]
girare to go around
guardare to look, to watch
guidare to drive
immaginare to imagine
incontrare to meet
iniziare to start
invitare to invite
lavorare to work
mangiare to eat
nuotare to swim
odiare to hate
parlare to speak

partecipare to participate
pensare to think
presentare to introduce, to present
registrare to record
ricercare to research
ricordare to remember
ringraziare to thank
ripassare to review, to revise
scherzare to kid, to joke
sperare to hope
studiare to study
suonare to play [an instrument]
usare to use
trovare to find
viaggiare to travel
visitare to visit

regular **-ere** verbs

Here is an example of an **-ere** verb:

chiedere to ask

io **chiedo**
tu **chiedi**
lui/lei/Lei **chiede**

noi **chiediamo**
voi **chiedete**
loro **chiedono**

chiedere to ask
chiudere to close
connettere to connect, to join
correre to run
discutere to discuss

leggere to read
perdere to lose
prendere to take, to catch [public transport], to get
riconoscere to recognise
riflettere to reflect

rispondere to answer
scrivere to write
vedere to see
vincere to win

regular **-ire** verbs

Here is an example of an **-ire** verb, with the first pattern of regular conjugation:

dormire to sleep

io **dormo**
tu **dormi**
lui/lei/Lei **dorme**

noi **dormiamo**
voi **dormite**
loro **dormono**

aprire to open
dormire to sleep
partire to leave, to depart
sentire to feel, to listen

regular -ire verbs

Here is an example of an **-ire** verb, with the second pattern of regular conjugation, using **isc**:

finire to finish

io fin**isco**
tu fin**isci**
lui/lei/Lei fin**isce**

noi fin**iamo**
voi fin**ite**
loro fin**iscono**

capire to understand
finire to finish
preferire to prefer

spedire to send
suggerire to suggest

irregular verbs

The irregular verbs **avere** and **essere** are frequently used in Italian, so it's very useful to know them.

avere to have
essere to be

avere to have

io **ho**
tu **hai**
lui/lei/Lei **ha**

noi **abbiamo**
voi **avete**
loro **hanno**

essere to be

io **sono**
tu **sei**
lui/lei/Lei **è**

noi **siamo**
voi **siete**
loro **sono**

Here are the other irregular verbs we've used in this book. Remember they each have their own special pattern.

andare to go
bere to drink
dare to give

dire to say, to tell
fare to do, to make

stare to stay
venire to come

andare to go

io vado

tu vai

lui/lei/Lei va

noi andiamo

voi andate

loro vanno

bere to drink

io bevo

tu bevi

lui/lei/Lei beve

noi beviamo

voi bevete

loro bevono

dare to give

io do

tu dai

lui/lei/Lei dà

noi diamo

voi date

loro danno

dire to say

io dico

tu dici

lui/lei/Lei dice

noi diciamo

voi dite

loro dicono

fare to do, to make

io faccio

tu fai

lui/lei/Lei fa

noi facciamo

voi fate

loro fanno

stare to stay

io sto

tu stai

lui/lei/Lei sta

noi stiamo

voi state

loro stanno

venire to come

io vengo

tu vieni

lui/lei/Lei viene

noi veniamo

voi venite

loro vengono



le espressioni

a che ora è...? at what time is...?	che fretta! what's the hurry?, what a rush!	con affetto lots of love
a destra to the right	che idiota! what an idiot!	con chi with whom
a domani see you tomorrow	che lagna! what a whinger!	connetti! connect!
a più tardi see you later	che maleducato! how rude!	costano un occhio they are very expensive [they cost an eye]
a presto see you soon	che mi succede? what's happening to me?	crea! create!
a proposito by the way	che museo! what a museum!	da... a... from... to...
a sinistra to the left	che ne dici? what do you say about it?	da molto tempo for a long time
a tutta velocità at full speed	che nebbia! how foggy!	da parte sua from him
a volte at times	che nervi! I'm fed up!	d'accordo OK
accidenti! blast!	che noia! how boring!	dai! come on!
alla vostra età at your age	che ora è? what time is it?	d'aiuto of help
all'estero overseas	che ore sono? what time is it?	dammi del tu! you can use the 'tu' form with me
altro che...! whatever...!	che peccato! what a pity!	dare fastidio to annoy
anch'io me too	che piaga! what a pain!	dare i numeri to go crazy
andiamo! let's go!	che scemo! how silly!	dare sui nervi to get on somebody's nerves
apri le orecchie! listen! [open your ears!]	che spaccone! what a showoff!	dare una festa to throw a party
arrivederci goodbye	che spiritoso! how funny!	dare una mano to give a hand [to help]
ascolta! listen!	che storia! how cool!	dare un'occhiata to have a look
aspetta! wait!	che tempo fa? what's the weather like?	di' tell, say
avere ... anni to be ... years old	che vita! what a life!	di che nazionalità è [Lei]? [fml] what nationality are you?
avere bisogno di to need	chi diavolo è? who the heck is he/she?	di che nazionalità è [lui/lei]? what nationality is he/she?
avere caldo to be hot	chi è [lui/lei]? who is he/she?	di che nazionalità sei? what nationality are you?
avere fame to be hungry	chiama! call!	di dove è [Lei]? [fml] where are you from?
avere freddo to be cold	chiedi! ask!	di dove è [lui/lei]? where is he/she from?
avere fretta to be in a hurry	ci chiamiamo our names are	di dove sei? where are you from?
avere mal di... to have a... -ache	ci dai una mano? will you give us a hand?	di più more
avere sete to be thirsty	ci sentiamo speak soon	discuti! discuss!
avere sonno to be sleepy	ci vediamo see you	d'oro vero [of] real gold
basta that's it, that's all	com'è [lui/lei]? what is he/she like?	dov'è ...? where is...?
basta così? will that be all?, anything else?	come si chiama [Lei]? [fml] what's your name?	dove 6? [dove sei?] where R U?
boh! [slang] I don't know	come si chiama [lui/lei]? what's his/her name?	dove abita [Lei]? [fml] where do you live?
buon pomeriggio good afternoon	come sta [Lei]? [fml] how are you?	dove abita [lui/lei]? where does he/she live?
buonanotte good night	come sta [lui/lei]? how is he/she?	dove abiti? where do you live?
buonasera good evening	come stai? how are you?	dove diavolo abiti? where the heck do you live?
buongiorno good morning	come stanno? how are they?	dove diavolo è [lui/lei]? where the heck is he/she?
calma! calm down!	come ti chiami? what's your name?	
c'è vento it's windy	come va? how's it going?	
che assurdo! how ridiculous!		
che batticuore! how awesome!		
che bello! how beautiful!		
che disastro! what a disaster!		
che fatica! how tiresome!		
che folla! what a crowd!		
che forte! how cool!		

- è ora di...** it's time to...
- ecco** here is
- eccoci** here we are
- entriamo!** let's go in!
- essere d'accordo** to agree
- essere in giro** to be out [not at home]
- essere in ritardo** to be late
- fa bel tempo** it's nice weather
- fa brutto tempo** it's awful weather
- fa caldo** it's hot
- fa freddo** it's cold
- fammi il piacere!** give me a break!
- fammi un favore!** do me a favour [give me a break!]
- fare alla romana** to split the bill
- fare bella figura** to make a good impression
- fare castelli in aria** to daydream, dream on
- fare colazione** to have breakfast
- fare di tutto** to do everything possible
- fare i compiti** to do homework
- fare il bagno** to have a bath
- fare il biglietto** to buy a ticket
- fare il misterioso** to be mysterious
- fare il pieno** to fill the petrol tank
- fare impressione** to look impressive
- fare la doccia** to have a shower
- fare la fila/la coda** to queue
- fare la spesa** to do the shopping
- fare shopping** to go shopping
- fare sul serio** to be serious [not joking]
- fare un bel bagno** to get drenched [in rain]
- fare un viaggio** to take a trip
- fare una domanda** to ask a question
- fare una fotografia** to take a photo
- fare una grigliata** to have a barbecue
- fare una passeggiata** to take a walk
- fate i bravi!** be good!
- Fede di qui, Fede di là** Fede here, Fede there, Fede everywhere
- fermi!** stop!
- gioca!** play!
- gli piacciono** he likes [followed by plural nouns]
- gli piace** he likes
- grazie al cielo** thank heavens
- grazie mille** thank you very much
- guarda!** look!
- guarda guarda** look here
- guardare dal finestrino** to look out the window [of a vehicle]
- immagina!** imagine!
- in bocca al lupo** good luck ['in the wolf's mouth']
- in gara** competing
- lavora in coppia!** work in pairs!
- lavora in gruppo!** work in groups!
- Le consiglio di [fm!]** I advise you to...
- le piacciono** she likes [followed by plural nouns]
- le piace** she likes
- Le piace [fm!]** you like
- Le presento [fm!]** I'd like you to meet
- leggi!** read!
- macché!** not at all!
- magari!** as if!
- mal di denti** toothache
- mal di pancia** stomach ache
- mal di schiena** backache
- mal di testa** headache
- mi chiamo** my name is
- mi dispiace** I'm sorry
- mi fa male...** something hurts/is sore
- mi fa male il piede** my foot hurts/is sore
- mi fa venire i brividi** it gives me the creeps
- mi fanno male...** something [pl] hurts/is sore
- mi fanno male i piedi** my feet hurt/are sore
- mi piacciono** I like [followed by plural nouns]
- mi piace** I like
- NB [Nota Bene]** please note
- neve** it's snowing
- non c'è male** not bad
- non c'è più [lui/lei]** he/she is no longer here
- non facciamo stupidaggini!** let's not do anything stupid!
- non mi dire** don't tell me
- non mi piace** I don't like
- non vedo l'ora** I can't wait
- parlare a vanvera** to speak without thinking
- peggio di...** worse than...
- per carità** for goodness sake
- per fortuna** luckily, fortunately
- per la testa** on [his/her] mind
- per me** to me
- per niente** not at all
- per studiare** to study
- per una volta** for once
- piacere!** pleased to meet you!
- piove** it's raining
- presenta!** present!
- qua la mano** give me five [give me the hand]
- quante ore?** how many hours?
- quanti anni avete [pl]?** how old are you?
- quanti anni ha [Lei]? [fm!]** how old are you?
- quanti anni ha [lui/lei]?** how old is he/she?
- quanti anni hai?** how old are you?
- quanti anni hanno?** how old are they?
- quanto costa?** how much does it cost?

quanto costano? how much do they cost?	tocca a te your turn
quanto è? how much is it?	trova! find!
quasi quasi... maybe, I've half a mind to...	TVB [ti voglio bene] I love you [with friends and family]
registra! record!	TVTb [ti voglio tanto bene] I love you very much [with friends and family]
ricerca! research!	uffa! how annoying!
rifletti! reflect!	usate la testa! [pl] use your head!
ripassa! review!	va bene it's OK
rispondi! answer!	vabbé OK
salve hello	vai tranquillo! don't worry!
scegli! choose!	vale molto it's worth a lot
scherzo! I'm kidding!	vero? don't you think?
scrivi! write!	vi chiamate [pl] your names are
scusa excuse me	vi piace [pl] you like
scusi [fml] excuse me	vorrei I would like
sé stesso himself	vorresti you would like
secondo me according to me	vuole ballare? [fml] would you like to dance?
sentì! listen!	
sentite! [pl] listen!	
si chiama his/her name is	
si chiamano their names are	
si parla del diavolo! speak of the devil!	
sono stufo I'm sick of it	
stanco morto dead tired	
sto male I feel bad	
tanti abbracci lots of hugs	
tanti baci lots of kisses	
tanti saluti best wishes, greetings	
ti consiglio di... I advise you to...	
ti piacciono you like [followed by plural nouns]	
ti piace you like	
ti presento I'd like you to meet	
ti va di giocare? do you feel like playing?	
ti va? do you feel like it?	
tocca a me my turn	

il vocabolario

English-Italian

A

@ [at] @ [chiocciola]
a un/uno [m], una/un' [f]
a lot molto, parecchio, tanto
a lot of molto, molti, tanto, tanti
A.D. [anno Domini] d.C. [dopo Cristo]
about circa, su
above all soprattutto
actually anzi
address indirizzo
address book agenda telefonica
adventure avventura
advise [to] consigliare
after dopo
afternoon pomeriggio
air aria
all tutto
alone da solo/a
already già
also anche, pure
altar altare [m]
always sempre
American americano
amphitheatre anfiteatro
amusing divertente
an un/uno [m], una/un' [f]
ancient antico
and e
angry arrabbiato
answer [to] rispondere
April aprile
arch arco
archaeology archeologia
arm braccio
arms braccia
aroma profumo
around circa, in giro
arrive [to] arrivare
arrived arrivato
artistic artistico
as come
as well anche
Asian orientale

ask [to] chiedere
at
at school a scuola
at [someone's place] da
at the excavation site agli scavi
at the seaside al mare
at the station in stazione
at all mica
at least almeno
athletics atletica
atrium atrio
August agosto
aunt zia
Australian australiano
away via

B

baby girl bambina
back schiena
backpack zaino
bad male
very bad malissimo
band gruppo
music band gruppo musicale
barbecue grigliata
basilica basilica
basketball basket, pallacanestro
bath bagno
be [to] essere
beach spiaggia
beautiful bello
very beautiful bellissimo
because perché
become [to] diventare
bedroom camera da letto
before prima di
behind dietro
big grande
very big grandissimo
bit po'
black nero
blonde biondo
blue azzurro
book libro
boring noioso

bottle [small] bottiglietta
boy ragazzo
bracelet braccialetto
brave coraggioso
bread roll panino
breakfast colazione
bridge ponte [m]
brooch spilla
brother fratello
brown marrone
brown [hair] bruno, castano
brunette bruna
building palazzo
bus pullman
bus stop fermata
but ma
buy [to] comprare
by
by car in auto
by 28 September entro 28 settembre
by the way a proposito

C

café [local] circolino
cake torta
cake [small] pasticcino
calculator calcolatrice [f]
calendar calendario
call [to] chiamare
Canadian canadese
canoeing canottaggio
cappuccino cappuccino
capsule capsula
car auto
car park parcheggio
cat gatto
catch [public transport] [to] prendere
cathedral duomo
Cathedral Square Piazza Duomo
CD player lettore CD [m]
celebrate [to] festeggiare
cemetery cimitero



English-Italian

charming affascinante
check controllare
cheese formaggio
Chinese cinese
choose [to] scegliere
church chiesa
city città
classic classico
classmate compagno di classe
close [to] chiudere
clothes vestiti
cloudy nuvoloso
clue indizio
coffee caffè
cold freddo
come [to] venire
comparison confronto
compass compasso
competition gara
connect [to] connettere
control [to] controllare
cook [to] cucinare
cooking cucina
cool forte, fresco
cost [to] costare
costume costume [m]
country paese [m]
cousin cugino [m], cugina [f]
crazy pazzo
cream crema
create [to] creare
creative creativo
croissant cornetto
crypt cripta
cuisine cucina
cute carino
cycling ciclismo

D

dad papà
dance [to] ballare
dark buio
day giorno
dead morto

dear caro
dearest carissimo
decayed [tooth] cariato
December dicembre
degrees gradi
degrees Celsius gradi centigradi
dentist dentista
depart [to] partire
dessert dolce [m]
destroyed distrutto
destruction distruzione [f]
devil diavolo
diary diario, agenda
electronic diary agenda elettronica
pocket diary agenda tascabile
digital camera macchina fotografica digitale
discount sconto
discuss [to] discutere
distraction distrazione [f]
do [to] fare
doctor dottore [m], dottoressa [f]
dog cane [m]
dream sogno
dress vestito
drink [to] bere
drive [to] guidare
drums batteria

E

eagle aquila
ear orecchio
early presto
really early prestissimo
earring orecchino
Easter Pasqua
easy facile
eat [to] mangiare
elegant elegante
elephant elefante [m]
emotion emozione [f]

emperor imperatore [m]
emu emù [m]
engine motore [m]
English inglese
enough abbastanza
enter [to] entrare
entrance entrata
envious invidioso
eruption eruzione [f]
especially soprattutto
even anche
evening sera
ever mai
every ogni
everybody tutti
exactly esattamente
excavation site scavi
excursion gita
excuse me scusa, scusi [fml]
exercise esercizio
exercise book quaderno
expensive costoso
eye occhio

F

faculty facoltà
fairly abbastanza
famous famoso
fast veloce
fat grasso
fault colpa
February febbraio
fed up stufo
feel [to] sentire
fencing scherma
ferry vaporetto
ferry stop fermata
few pochi
figurine statuetta
finally finalmente
find [to] trovare
finish [to] finire
fireplace camino
first prima, primo

fish pesce [m]
fog nebbia
foot piede [m]
for per
forget [to] dimenticare
forum foro
fountain fontana
frame cornice [f]
free gratis, libero
French francese
Friday venerdì
friend amico [m], amica [f]
fright spavento
from da
fugitive fuggitivo

G

gallery galleria
garden giardino
generally in generale
generation generazione [f]
German tedesco
get [to] prendere
get to [to] arrivare
gift regalo
giraffe giraffa
girl ragazza
young girl ragazzina
give [to] dare
glass vetro
glasses occhiali
glue stick colla
go [to] andare
go around [to] girare
go in [to] entrare
gold oro
good bravo
very good bravissimo
good afternoon buon pomeriggio
good evening buonasera
good morning buongiorno
good night buonanotte
goodbye arrivederci

graduate laureato
Grand Prix Gran Premio
great grande, grandissimo, fortissimo
Greek greco
green verde
greeting saluto
group gruppo
guard guardia
guess [to] indovinare
guest invitato, ospite [m/f]
guided guidato
guitar chitarra
gymnasium palestra
gymnastics ginnastica artistica e ritmica

H

hair capelli
half mezzo/a
hand mano
happy contento
very happy contentissimo
hate [to] odiare
have [to] avere
he lui
head testa
heaps parecchio
heart cuore [m]
hello salve
help aiuto
help [to] aiutare
her lei
here qui
here's ecco
hi ciao
highlighter evidenziatore [m]
him lui
history storia
holiday vacanza
home casa
homeland terra d'origine
homework compiti
hope speranza

hope [to] sperare
hostel ostello
hot caldo
house casa
how che, come
how many quanti
how much quanto
however comunque, però
hug abbraccio
hurry fretta

I

I io
ID card tesserino
idol idolo
image immagine [f]
imagine [to] immaginare
in in [before countries, states, regions]
a [before cities]
Indian indiano
injection iniezione [f]
innovative innovativo
inside dentro
instead invece, piuttosto
intelligent intelligente
introduce [to] presentare
invitation invito
invite [to] invitare
Irish irlandese
is [he/she/it] è
island isola
Italian italiano

J

January gennaio
Japanese giapponese
jealous geloso
jewellery [a piece of] gioiello
join [to] connettere
joke [to] scherzare
July luglio
June giugno
just proprio



English-Italian

K

kangaroo canguro
key chiave [f]
kid [to] scherzare
kindergarten asilo
kiss bacio
kitchen cucina
knee ginocchio
knees ginocchia
know [you know] sai
koala koala
Korean coreano

L

lake lago
lamp lampada
lap giro
large largo
very large larghissimo
late tardi, in ritardo
really late tardissimo
later più tardi
latest ultimo
lazy pigro
leave [to] partire
Lebanese libanese
left sinistra
leg gamba
life vita
light luce [f]
like come
like [to] piacere
likeable simpatico
line coda, fila
lion leone [m]
listen [to] ascoltare, sentire
little poco
little girl bambina
live [to] abitare
loan prestito
locker armadietto
long lungo
look [to] guardare

look for [to] cercare
loose leaf folder raccoglitore [m]
lose [to] perdere
lounge room salone [m]
love [to] amare
luck fortuna
lucky fortunato
lyric testo [musicale]

M

madam signora
magazine rivista
main principale
make [to] fare
many tante [f], tanti [m]
map cartina
tourist map cartina turistica
March marzo
mark voto
mask maschera
masterpiece capolavoro
May maggio
maybe forse
me io
meet [to] incontrare
meeting incontro
mega mega
midday mezzogiorno
midnight mezzanotte
military service servizio militare
mirror specchio
mischievous birichino
mobile phone cellulare [m], telefonino
modern moderno
moment momento
Monday lunedì
money soldi
more più
morning mattina
mosaic mosaico
motor motore [m]
mountain montagna

mouse topo
mouse pad tappetino
mousse spumone [m]
MP3 player lettore MP3 [m]
Mr signor
much tanto
mum mamma
museum museo
musical instrument strumento musicale
must [I must] devo
my mio
mysterious misterioso
mystery mistero

N

nationality nazionalità
near vicino
neck collo
necklace collana
need bisogno
never mai
new nuovo
New Zealander neozelandese
news notizia
newspaper giornale [m]
next prossimo
night notte [f]
nobody nessuno
noise rumore [m]
not non
nothing niente
November novembre
now adesso
number numero

O

object oggetto
objective obiettivo
October ottobre
of di
of course naturalmente
of the del
office ufficio

old anziano
 old-fashioned antiquato
 on su, in
 on sale in offerta
 on the in
 only solo
 open [to] aprire
 or o
 orange soda aranciata
 organiser agenda elettronica
 oriental orientale
 other altro
 our nostro
 outside fuori

P

packet pacchetto
 painkiller antidolorifico
 palace palazzo
 panoramic panoramica
 parrot pappagallo
 participate partecipare
 party festa
 patient paziente [m/f]
 peace pace [f]
 pen penna
 fountain pen stilografica
 pencil matita
 pencil case astuccio
 pendant pendente [m]
 people persone
 perfume profumo
 perfume spray vaporizzatore [m]
 person persona
 phone telefono
 photograph fotografia
 pill pillola
 place posto
 play [to] giocare
 play [a sport] [to] giocare a
 play [an instrument] [to] suonare
 pleased to meet you piacere

poor povero
 possible possibile
 postcard cartolina
 postcode CAP [Codice di Avviamento Postale] [m]
 power potenza, potere [m]
 preaching prediche
 prefer [to] preferire
 prescription ricetta
 present [to] presentare
 presenter presentatore [m]
 press conference conferenza-stampa
 presumptuous presuntuoso
 product prodotto
 professor professore [m], professoressa [f]
 pronounce [to] pronunciare
 pronunciation pronuncia
 pudding budino
 purchase spesa

Q

question domanda
 queue coda, fila
 quiet silenzioso

R

rabbit coniglio
 racing car driver pilota
 rain [to] piovere
 read [to] leggere
 ready pronto
 real vero
 really proprio
 reasonably priced conveniente
 rebellious ribelle [m/f]
 recently recentemente, ultimamente
 recognise [to] riconoscere
 record [to] registrare
 red rosso
 reflect [to] riflettere
 remember [to] ricordare
 research [to] ricercare

review [to] ripassare
 rhythm ritmo
 rich ricco
 very rich ricchissimo
 right destra
 ring anello
 Roman romano
 room camera
 rubber gomma
 rude maleducato
 ruler riga
 run [to] correre
 Russian russo

S

sacred sacro
 Saturday sabato
 sauna sauna
 say [to] dire
 school scuola
 primary school scuola elementare
 junior secondary school scuola media
 school focusing on languages liceo linguistico
 secondary school scuola superiore
 specialised high school liceo
 sea mare [m]
 season stagione [f]
 schoolbag cartella
 see [to] vedere
 see you ci vediamo
 see you later a più tardi
 see you soon a presto
 see you tomorrow a domani
 send [to] spedire
 September settembre
 serious serio
 serpent serpente [m]
 she lei
 shirt camicia
 shop negozio



English-Italian

- shopping**
to do the [grocery] shopping fare la spesa
to go shopping fare shopping
short basso, corto
show spettacolo
shower doccia
shy timido
since da
sing [to] cantare
singer cantante [m/f]
sir signore [m]
sister sorella
sleep [to] dormire
small piccolo
smart sveglio
snow [to] nevicare
so così
so so così così
soccer calcio
soft drink bibita
solution soluzione [f]
someone qualcuno
something else altro
soon presto, prossimamente
Spanish spagnolo
speak [to] parlare
speed velocità
sport sport
square piazza
start [to] iniziare
started iniziato
station stazione [f]
statue statua
stay [to] stare, restare
stereo system stereo
sticker adesivo
sticky tape scotch
still ancora
stomach pancia
stove stufa
strange strano
street via
stressful stressante
- strict** severo
strong forte
very strong fortissimo
student studente [m], studentessa [f]
first-year university student matricola
study studio
study [to] studiare
stupid stupido
style stile [m]
subject materia
suggest [to] suggerire
sun sole [m]
Sunday domenica
supporter tifoso
surprise sorpresa
swan cigno
swim [to] nuotare
swimming nuoto
swimming pool piscina
Swiss svizzero
symbol simbolo
syrup sciroppo
- T**
table tavolo
table [in a café] tavolino
take [to] prendere
tall alto
tattoo tatuaggio
tea tè
teacher professore [m], professoressa [f]
telephone area code prefisso telefonico
tell [to] dire
temple tempio
tennis tennis
thank [to] ringraziare
thank you grazie
thank you very much grazie mille
thanks grazie
- that** che, quello
the il/lo [m], la [f], l' [m/f], i/gli [m, pl], le [f, pl]
then allora, poi
there là
there are ci sono
there is c'è
they loro
thin magro
thing cosa
think [to] pensare
this questo
though però
throat gola
Thursday giovedì
ticket biglietto
tiger tigre [f]
time tempo
tired stanco
really tired stanchissimo
to a
 meno [before the hour]
 da [before a verb]
today oggi
together insieme
tomb tomba
tomorrow domani
tonight stasera
too anche, troppo
too much troppo
tooth dente [m]
touchy permaloso
towards verso
train treno
underground train metropolitana
travel [to] viaggiare
true vero
Tuesday martedì
Turkish turco
TV camera telecamera
TV show spettacolo televisivo
type tipo
typical tipico

U

ugly brutto
uncle zio
underground sotterraneo
understand [to] capire
unlikeable antipatico
up and coming emergente
use [to] usare
usual solito
usually di solito

V

vain vanitoso
vase vaso
very molto
videogame videogioco
Vietnamese vietnamita [m/f]
villa villa
visit [to] visitare
voice voce [f]
volcano vulcano
volleyball pallavolo

W

wait [to] aspettare
walk passeggiata
wallet borsellino
waltz valzer
want [I want] voglio
watch orologio
watch [to] guardare
water polo pallanuoto
we noi
weak debole
weather tempo
Wednesday mercoledì
weird strano
welcome benvenuto
well allora, beh, bene
very well benissimo
well then insomma
what che cosa, che, cosa
whatever insomma
when quando
where dove
who chi

why? perché?
wimp fifone [m], fifona [f]
win [to] vincere
wind vento
window finestra, finestrino [in vehicles]
with con
without senza
work lavoro
work [to] lavorare
worried preoccupato
very worried preoccupatissimo
worse peggio
worth [to be] valere
write [to] scrivere

Y

year anno
you tu, voi, Lei [fml]
young giovane
your tuo

Z

zombie zombi

Italian-English

A

@ [chiocciola] @ [at symbol in web addresses, 'snail']
a in [before cities]
a scuola at school
vado a Melbourne I go to Melbourne
a domani see you tomorrow
a più tardi see you later
a presto see you soon
a proposito by the way
abbastanza fairly, enough, quite
abbraccio hug
abitare to live
adesivo sticker
adesso now

affascinante charming
agenda diary
agenda elettronica electronic diary, organiser
agenda tascabile pocket diary
agenda telefonica address book
agli at the
agosto August
aiutare to help
aiuto help
al at the, to the
allora well, then
almeno at least
altare [m] altar
alto tall

altro something else, other
amare to love
americano American
amica [f] friend
amico [m] friend
anche too,
ancora still, as well, also, even
andare to go
anello ring
anfiteatro amphitheatre
anno year
antico ancient
antidolorifico painkiller
antipatico unlikeable
antiquato old-fashioned
anzi actually



glossary

English-Italian

anziano old
aprile April
aprire to open
aquila eagle
aranciata orange soda
archeologia archaeology
arco arch
aria air
armadietto locker
arrabbiato angry
arrivare to arrive, to get to
 arrivato arrived
arrivederci goodbye
artistico artistic
ascoltare to listen
asilo kindergarten
aspettare to wait
astuccio pencil case
atletica athletics
atrio atrium
australiano Australian
auto car
avere to have
avventura adventure
azzurro blue

B

bacio kiss
bagno bath
ballare to dance
bambina baby girl, little girl
basilica basilica
basket basketball
basso short
batteria drums
beh well
bello beautiful
 bellissimo very beautiful
bene well
 benissimo very well
benvenuto welcome
bere to drink
bibita soft drink
biglietto ticket

biondo blonde
birichino mischievous
bisogno need
borsellino wallet
bottiglietta small bottle
braccialetto bracelet
braccio arm
 braccia arms
bravo good
 bravissimo very good
bruna Brunette
bruno brown [hair]
brutto ugly
budino pudding
buio dark
buon pomeriggio good afternoon
buonanotte good night
buonasera good evening
buongiorno good morning

C

caffè coffee
calcio soccer
calcolatrice [f] calculator
caldo hot
calendario calendar
camera room
 camera da letto bedroom
camicia shirt
camino fireplace
canadese Canadian
cane [m] dog
canguro kangaroo
canottaggio canoeing
cantante [m/f] singer
cantare to sing
CAP [Codice di Avviamento Postale] [m] postcode
capelli hair
capire to understand
capolavoro masterpiece
cappuccino cappuccino
capsula capsule
cariato decayed [tooth]
caro dear
 carissimo dearest
carino cute
cartella schoolbag
cartina map
 cartina turistica tourist map
cartolina postcard
casa home, house
castano/a brown hair/ Brunette
c'è there is
cellulare [m] mobile phone
cercare to look for
che what, how, that
che cosa what
chi who
chiamare to call
chiave [f] key
chiedere to ask
chiesa church
chitarra guitar
chiudere to close
ci sono there are
ci vediamo see you
ciao hi
ciclismo cycling
cigno swan
cimitero cemetery
cinese Chinese
circa about, around
circolino [local] café
città city
classico classic, classical
coda queue, line
colazione breakfast
colla glue stick
collana necklace
collo neck
colpa fault
come how, like, as, what
compagno di classe classmate
compasso compass
compiti homework

comprare to buy
comunque however
con with
concorso competition
conferenza-stampa press conference
confronto comparison
coniglio rabbit
connettere to connect, to join
consigliare to advise
contentissimo very happy
contento happy
controllare to check, to control
conveniente reasonably priced
coraggioso brave
coreano Korean
cornetto croissant
cornice [f] frame
correre to run
corto short
cosa thing, what
così so
così così so so
costare to cost
costoso expensive
costume [m] costume
creare to create
creativo creative
crema cream
cripta crypt
cucina kitchen, cooking, cuisine
cucinare to cook
cugina [f] cousin
cugino [m] cousin
cuore [m] heart

D

d.C. [dopo Cristo] A.D. [anno Domini]
da to/at [someone's place]
viene da Melbourne he/she comes from Melbourne
da visitare to visit
da quando? since when?
da solo/a alone

dare to give
debole weak
del of the
dente [m] tooth
dentista dentist
dentro inside
destra right
devo I must
di of
di solito usually
diario diary
diavolo devil
dicembre December
dietro behind, at the back of
dimenticare to forget
dire to say, to tell
discutere to discuss
distrazione [f] distraction
distrutto destroyed
distruzione [f] destruction
diventare to become
divertente amusing
doccia shower
dolce [m] dessert
domanda question
domani tomorrow
domenica Sunday
dopo after
dormire to sleep
dottore [m] doctor
dottoressa [f] doctor
dove where
duomo cathedral

E

e and
è [he/she/it] is
ecco here's
elefante [m] elephant
elegante elegant
emergente up and coming
emozione [f] emotion
emù [m] emu
entrare to enter, to go in
entrata entrance

entro by
eruzione [f] eruption
esattamente exactly
esercizio exercise
essere to be
evidenziatore [m] highlighter

F

facile easy
facoltà faculty
famoso famous
fare to do, to make
febbraio February
fermata bus, ferry stop
festa party
festeggiare to celebrate
fifona [f] wimp
fifone [m] wimp
fila queue, line
finalmente finally
finestra window
finestrino window [in vehicles]
finire to finish
fontana fountain
formaggio cheese
foro forum
forse maybe
forte cool, strong
fortissimo great, very strong
fortuna luck
fortunato lucky
fotografia photograph
francese French
fratello brother
freddo cold
fresco cool
fretta hurry
fuggitivo fugitive
fuori outside

G

galleria gallery
gamba leg
gara competition
gatto cat



Italian-English

geloso jealous
generazione [f] generation
gennaio January
già already
giapponese Japanese
giardino garden
ginnastica artistica e ritmica gymnastics
ginocchio knee
ginocchia knees
giocare a to play [a sport]
gioiello piece of jewellery
giornale [m] newspaper
giorno day
giovane young
giovedì Thursday
giraffa giraffe
girare to go around, to travel around
giro lap
gita excursion
giugno June
gola throat
gomma rubber
gradi degrees
gradi centigradi degrees Celsius
Gran Premio Grand Prix
grande big, great
grandissimo very big, great
grasso fat
gratis free
grazie thank
grazie mille thank you very much
greco Greek
grigliata barbecue
gruppo group, band
gruppo musicale music band
guardare to look, to watch
guardia guard
guidare to drive
guidato guided

I

i/gli [m, pl] the

idolo idol
il/lo [m] the
immaginare to imagine
immagine [f] image
imperatore [m] emperor
in in [before countries, states, regions]
in auto by car
in generale generally
in giro around
in metropolitana on the underground train
in offerta on sale
in ritardo late
in stazione at the station
in vacanza on holiday
incontrare to meet
incontro meeting
indiano Indian
indirizzo address
indizio clue
indovinare to guess
inglese English
iniezione [f] injection
iniziare to start
iniziato started
innovativo innovative
insieme together
insomma well then..., whatever
intelligente intelligent
invece instead
invidioso envious
invitare to invite
invitato guest
invito invitation
io I, me
irlandese Irish
isola island
italiano Italian

K

koala koala

L

l' [m/f] the

là there
la [f] the
lago lake
lampada lamp
largo large
larghissimo very large
laureato graduate
lavorare to work
lavoro work
le [f, pl] the
leggere to read
lei she, her
Lei [fml] you
leone [m] lion
lettore CD [m] CD player
lettore MP3 [m] MP3 player
libanese Lebanese
libero free
libro book
liceo [specialised] high school
liceo linguistico secondary school focusing on languages
loro they
luce [f] light
luglio July
lui he, him
lunedì Monday
lungo long

M

ma but
macchina fotografica digitale digital camera
maggio May
magro thin
mai never, ever
male bad
malissimo very bad
maleducato rude
mamma mum
mangiare to eat
mano hand
mare [m] sea
al mare at the seaside
marrone brown

martedì Tuesday
marzo March
maschera mask
materia subject
matita pencil
matricola first-year university student
mattina morning
mega mega
meno to [before the hour]
mercoledì Wednesday
metropolitana underground train
mezza/o half
mezzanotte midnight
mezzogiorno midday
mica at all
mio my
misterioso mysterious
mistero mystery
moderno modern
molti a lot of
molto very, a lot
momento moment
montagna mountain
morto dead
mosaico mosaic
motore [m] motor, engine
museo museum

N

naturalmente of course
nazionalità nationality
nebbia fog
negozio shop
nel in the
nella in the
neozelandese New Zealander
nero black
nessuno nobody
nevicare to snow
niente nothing
noi we
noioso boring
non not
nostro our

notizia news
notte [f] night
novembre November
numero numero
nuotare to swim
nuoto swimming
nuovo new
nuvoloso cloudy

O

o or
obiettivo objective
occhiali glasses
occhio eye
odiare to hate
oggetto object
oggi today
ogni every
orecchino earring
orecchio ear
orientale Asian, oriental
oro gold
orologio watch
ospite [m/f] guest
ostello hostel
ottobre October

P

pacchetto packet
pace [f] peace
paese [m] country
palazzo building, palace
palestra gymnasium
pallacanestro basketball
pallanuoto water polo
pallavolo volleyball
pancia stomach
panino bread roll
panoramica panoramic
papà dad
pappagallo parrot
parcheggio car park
parecchio a lot, heaps
parlare to speak

partecipare to participate
partire to leave, to depart
Pasqua Easter
passeggiata walk
pasticcino small cake
paziente [m/f] patient
pazzo crazy
peggio worse
pendente [m] pendant
penna pen
pensare to think
per for
perché because, why?
perdere to lose
permaloso touchy
però though, however
persona person
persone people
pesce [m] fish
piacere to like, pleased to meet you
piazza square
Piazza Duomo Cathedral Square [in Milano]
piccolo small
piede [m] foot
pigro lazy
pillola pill
pilota racing car driver
piovvere to rain
piscina swimming pool
più more
più tardi later
piuttosto instead
po' bit
pochi few
poco little, small
poi then
pomeriggio afternoon
ponte [m] bridge
possibile possible
posto place
potenza power
potere [m] power
povero poor



Italian-English

prediche preaching
preferire to prefer
prefisso telefonico telephone area code
prendere to take, to catch [public transport], to get
preoccupato worried
preoccupatissimo very worried
presentare to introduce, to present
presentatore [m] presenter
prestito loan
presto soon, early
prestissimo really early
presuntuoso presumptuous
prima first
prima di before
primo first
principale main
prodotto product
professore [m] professor, teacher
professoressa [f] professor, teacher
profumo perfume, aroma
pronto ready
pronuncia pronunciation
pronunciare to pronounce
proprio really, just
prossimamente soon
prossimo next
pullman bus
pure also

Q
quaderno exercise book
qualcuno someone
quando when
quanti how many
quanto how much
quello that
questo this
qui here

R
raccoglitore [m] loose leaf folder
ragazza girl
ragazzina young girl
ragazzo boy
recentemente recently
regalo gift
registrare to record
restare to stay
ribelle rebellious
ricco rich
ricchissimo very rich
ricercare to research
ricetta prescription
riconoscere to recognise
ricordare to remember
riflettere to reflect
riga ruler
ringraziare to thank
ripassare to review
rispondere to answer
ritmo rhythm
rivista magazine
romano Roman
rosso red
rumore [m] noise
russo Russian

S
sabato Saturday
sacro sacred
sai you know
salone [m] lounge room
saluto greeting
salve hello
sauna sauna
scavi excavation site
scegliere to choose
scherma fencing
scherzare to kid, to joke
schiena back
sciropo syrup
sconto discount
scotch sticky tape

scrivere to write
scuola school
scuola elementare primary school
scuola media junior secondary school
scuola superiore secondary school
scusa excuse me
scusi [fml] excuse me
sempre always
sentire to feel, to listen
senza without
sera evening
serio serious
serpente [m] serpent
servizio militare military service
settembre September
severo strict
signor Mr
signora madam
signore [m] sir
silenzioso quiet
simbolo symbol
simpatico likeable
sinistra left
sogno dream
soldi money
sole [m] sun
solito usual
solo only
soluzione [f] solution
soprattutto especially, above all
sorella sister
sorpresa surprise
sotterraneo underground
spagnolo Spanish
spavento fright
specchio mirror
spedire to send
speranza hope
sperare to hope
spesa purchase
spettacolo show
spettacolo televisivo TV show

spiaggia beach
spilla brooch
sport sport
spumone [m] mousse
stagione [f] season
stanco tired
stanchissimo really tired
stare to stay
stasera tonight
statua statue
statuetta figurine
stazione [f] station
stereo stereo system
stile [m] style
stilografica fountain pen
storia history
strano strange, weird
stressante stressful
strumento musicale musical instrument
studente [m] student
studentessa [f] student
studiare to study
studio study
stufa stove
stufo fed up
stupidata stupid thing
stupido stupid
su on, about
suggerire to suggest
suonare to play [an instrument]
svoglio smart
svizzero Swiss

T

tanto a lot, many, much
tappetino mouse pad
tardi late
tardissimo really late
tatuaggio tattoo
tavolino table [in a café]
tavolo table
tè tea
tedesco German
telecamera TV camera

telefonino mobile phone
telefono phone
tempio temple
tempo time, weather
tennis tennis
terra d'origine homeland
tesserino ID card
testa head
testo [musicale] lyric
tifoso supporter
tigre [f] tiger
timido shy
tipico typical
tipo type
tomba tomb
topo mouse
torta cake
treno train
troppo too, too much
trovare to find
tu you
tuo your
turco Turkish
tutti everybody
tutto all

U

ufficio office
ultimamente recently
ultimo latest
un/uno [m] a, an
una/un' [f] a, an
usare to use

V

vacanza holiday
valere to be worth
valzer waltz
vanitoso vain
vaporetto ferry
vaporizzatore [m] perfume sprayer
vaso vase
vedere to see
veloce fast

velocità speed
venerdì Friday
venire to come
vento wind
verde green
vero true, real
verso towards
vestito dress
vestiti clothes
vetro glass
via away, street
viaggiare to travel
vicino near
videogioco videogame
viene da she/he comes from
vietnamita Vietnamese
villa villa
vincere to win
visitare to visit
vita life
voce [f] voice
voglio I want
voi [pl] you
voto mark
vulcano volcano

X

x [per] for

Z

zaino backpack
zia aunt
zio uncle
zombi zombie



Esplora SB Acknowledgements

AAP Image, pp. 138 centre, 138 left; Alamy, p. 19 (guard); Corbis, p. 4 top/DK Limited, p. 9 top right (sausage)/epa, p. 8 centre left (cassini)/Franco Origlia, p. 9 bottom right/Rainer Schmitz/zefa, p. 144 right/Sergio Pitamitz, pp. 8-9/Schlegelmilch, p. 74 bottom/Stapleton Collection, p. 58 top right/Stefano Scatà/Grand Tour, p. 9 top right (Panini)/Summerfield Press, p. 69/Vittoriano Rastelli, p. 39 top left; Fotolia, pp. 17, 18 top (Venice), 38 (coffee), 125 centre centre/Andrea Dell Anno, p. 19 top (Rome)/Andrea Rankovic, p. 25 (blue)/Brian Creswick, p. 84 bottom left/Csaba Balsai, p. 59 bottom/Edyta Pawlowska, p. 156 centre left/Federico Romano, p. 149 top background/foto. fritz, p. 158 top left/Gino Santa Maria, p. 109 top right/Hubert Coia, pp. 19 top (Sienna), 28 (Milan)/Igor Burchenkov, p. 157 (teen boy)/Jason Stitt, pp. 5 top left/24 top/Jean Marie Salvadori, p. 158 centre left/jedphoto, p. 19 top right/Jonatha Borzicchi, p. 159 bottom left/Maurizio Malangone, p. 55 left/pixelcarpenter, p. 24 centre left/Pontus Edenberg, p. 46 bottom left/Robert Mayer, p. 18 top (Rome)/Stelios Filippou, pp. 30 right, 67 top/Yuri Arcurs, p. 65 (girl with red hair); Getty Images, p. 38 (catacombs)/Alan Becker, p. 98 bottom right/Eileen Bach, p. 56 bottom/Emma Innocenti, p. 5 top centre/Lisa Peardon, p. 14 centre/Marissa Kaiser, p. 64 centre/Paul Edmondson, p. 36 top; iStockphoto, cover and back cover, pp. 1, 5 bottom centre, 6, 8 bottom, 9 centre right, 15 bottom, 15 centre (boy hat), 16 top, 18-19, 19 (postbox), 20 left, 35, 38 (map), 44 centre left, 46 (statue), 47 bottom left, 47 (pen), 48 bottom right, 49 top left, 49 bottom left, 49 bottom centre, 54 left, 54 right, 66 (shopping), 67 top right, 68 top right, 84 (bracelet), 84 (Pendant), 85, 88 bottom left, 90 right, 91 left, 96 (centre screen), 104-105, 106 bottom left, 108 centre left, 108 bottom left, 108 top centre, 108 bottom right, 110 bottom right, 111 bottom left, 117 top left, 118 centre left, 120, 125 top right, 126 top centre, 126 background, 131 bottom left, 135 centre left, 140 bottom right, 140 centre, 144 left, 145 top right, 146 centre right, 148 centre, 149 (gelati), 150-151, 156 bottom centre inset, 157 (David statue), 160 bottom left, 160 bottom right/Achim Prill, p. 126 bottom right/Adam Korzekwa, p. 159 top left/Alejandro Mozo, p. 84 top right/Aleksandar Kolundzija, p. 161 bottom left/Aleksandr Lobanov, p. 78 top left/Alessandro Contadini, p. 79 bottom left/Alexander Babich, p. 138 top right/Alexander Hafemann, pp. 135 centre right, 146 centre/Allison Marles, p. 49 centre left/Ana Abejon, p. 37 (girl)/Andreas Teske, p. 89 top right/Andrea Volpicelli, p. 8 centre right/Andrew Rich, p. 137 bottom right/Anja Peternelj, p. 134 background/Arne Thaysen, p. 40 bottom left/Bill Grove, p. 160 bottom centre/Bill Noll, p. 37 (leather)/Blaz Kure, p. 51 bottom centre/Bogdan Lazar, p. 110 bottom left/Branislav Bubanja, p. 156 (background fountain)/Brian Sinderson, p. 50 bottom left/Carmen Martínez Banús, p. 135 right/Charles Taylor, p. 86/Choon Hwa Yeo, p. 149 top right/Clifford Shirley, p. 147 (flowers)/Dale Hogan, p. 147 (doctor)/Dan Thornberg, p. 137 centre right/Dan Wilton, p. 97 bottom left/Daniel Rodriguez, p. 24 centre top, 97 top right/Danilo Ascione, pp. 41 (Trevi fountain), 117 centre right/David Ellis, p. 19 top left/David Pedre, pp. 46 bottom right, 47 top right, 51 bottom left/Don Bayley, p. 145 centre/Dragan Trifunovic, p. 66 (burger background)/Eduardo Jose Bernardino, p. 104 top right/Eric Simard, p. 134 centre/E Segeren, p. 74 (Chequered flag)/Fanelie Rosier, p. 157 (Eiffel Tower)/Flavia Bottazzini, p. 157 (Flinders St Station)/Francesco Parolin, pp. 18 (bread), 20 centre/Galina Barskaya, p. 96 bottom left/Gansovsky Vladislav, p. 91 right/Gary Martin, p. 147 top left/Geoff Hardy, pp. 39 (farfalle, bow)/George Toublis, p. 8 centre left (Saturn)/GinasGalaxy, p. 58 background/Giovanni Rinaldi, pp. 40 bottom centre/40 bottom right/Giovanni A. Viscomi, p. 111 bottom centre/Greg Nicholas, p. 128 centre/Hadleigh Thompson, p. 118 centre/Hasan Kursad Ergun, p. 127 bottom right/Hedda Gjerpen, pp. 14 bottom, 21 right/158 bottom left/Hien Pham, p. 156 top right/Hubert Grüner, p. 118 top right/Ivan Stevanovic, pp. 37 (mp3)/Izabela Habur, Pp. 65 top left, 65 bottom left/Izusek, p. 59 top/Jacob Wackerhausen, p. 137 bottom centre/Jaimie Duplass, p. 34/James Margolis, Pp. 110-111/James Mullineaux, p. 38 (skull)/James Pauls, pp. 65 bottom right, 97 top left/Jamie Carroll, p. 96 bottom centre/Jamie Evans, pp. 27 top left, 28 bottom left/Jason Lugo, p. 27 centre bottom/Jason Walton, p. 61 right/Jelani Memory, p. 45 top left/Jelena Popi, p. 130 bottom left/Jeremy Edwards, p. 147 (beach scene)/Jessie Carbonaro, pp. 119 top left, 121 bottom left/Jim Kolaczko, pp.

138-139/Jim Tardio, pp. 58-59/Joachim Angeltun, p. 126 centre left/Joan Vicent Cantó Roig, p. 146 left/Joaquin Ayllon, p. 158 bottom right/Joey Nelson, p. 74 top/Johanna Goodyear, p. 89 top centre/John Clines, p. 139 top centre/Jon Horton, p. 24 bottom/Jordan Chesbrough, p. 94 bottom right/Jose Antonio, p. 104 bottom right/Joshua Blake, pp. 106 bottom centre, 107 top right, 147 (people at computer)/Jozef Sedmak, p. 77/Juan Monino, p. 149 bottom left/Juergen Sack, p. 148 top/Juri Semjonow, p. 89 top left/Justin Horrocks, p. 145 centre left/Kati Neudert, p. 114/Kelly Borsheim, pp. 69 top right, 71 right/Kelly Cline, pp. 28 centre right, 66 (Panini), 99 centre left/Kerry Muzzey, p. 26/Kjell Brynildsen, p. 20 right/Korhan Isik, p. 115 right/Krembo Ninenine, p. 110 bottom centre/Kristian Sekulic, p. 18 (lion)/Leigh Schindler, pp. 27 top centre, 156 bottom right inset/Lisa Kyle Young, p. 94 top left/Lise Gagne, pp. 135 left, 147 (business meeting)/Luca di Filippo, p. 37 (phone)/Luke Daniek, pp. 18 (colosseum), 19 bottom, 98 top right, 150 bottom centre left/Malcolm Romain, p. 37 (wallet)/Marc C. Johnson, pp. 68-69 top/Maria Bibikova, p. 147 (dog and cat)/Mark Murphy, p. 37 (shirts)/Marisa Allegra Williams, pp. 19 (stamp), 108 top left, 150 bottom centre right, 151 bottom centre/Marjan Laznik, p. 89 bottom left/Mark Evans, pp. 134, 134 left, 136, 137 top right background/Mark Goddard, p. 158 bottom centre left/Marko Radunovic, p. 74 (mask)/Mary Lane, p. 61 left/Massimiliano Pieraccini, pp. 124, 129 top centre, 130 bottom right, 131 bottom right/Michael Blackburn, p. 88 background/Michael Braun, p. 121 (background)/Michael Chen, pp. 47, 48 bottom left, 50 bottom right/Michael Kemter, p. 65 top left/Michal Rozanski, p. 88 bottom right/Nancy Nehring, p. 58 (fig leaf)/Nadezda Firsova, p. 66 (cornetti)/Nicholas Belton, pp. 9 top left (map), 45 top, 119 top right/Nick Free, p. 148 right/Nicola Vernizzi, p. 130 centre bottom/Nicolae Popovici, Pp. 118 bottom left, 118-119/Oleg Prikhodko, p. 64 top/Paolo Stefi, p. 146 top background/Paul Picone, p. 40 top/Paul Piebinga, pp. 108-109/Peeter Viisimaa, pp. 117 bottom left, 117 bottom centre/Peter Finnie, p. 137 centre centre/Peter Frank, p. 89 bottom right/Peter Mlekuž, pp. 89 centre right, 141 left/Pippa West, p. 148 left/Radu Razvan, p. 126 top right/Rafa Iruستا, p. 29 (bag)/Richard Waller, p. 131 bottom centre/Robert Bremec, Pp. 128-129 top/Robert Deal, p. 36 bottom/Robert Ross, p. 78 centre right/Roberto A Sanchez, pp. 68 bottom right, 70 right, 88 bottom centre/Roberto Adrian, p. 74 (books)/Sandy Jones, p. 74 (paper textures)/Sasha Radosavljevic, p. 129 top right/Sean Locke, pp. 115 centre left, 137 centre left/Sergey Kashkin, p. 29 (ice creams)/Shane Stezelberger, p. 78 top right/Sharon Dominick, Pp. 88 top centre, 96 centre left/Shelly Perry, pp. 5 top right, 96 (teen boy)/Simon Podgorsek, pp. 115 left, 115 centre right/Skip O'Donnell, p. 115 centre right/Slawomir Jastrzebski, p. 117 top right background/Slobo Mitic, p. 137 bottom left/Stan Rippel, p. 48 centre left/Slobo Mitic, p. 137 bottom left/Stephen Walls, pp. 147 (lasagne), 150 bottom left/Steven Allan, p. 158 top right/Sue Colvil, pp. 18 (soldier), 21 left/Susan Broccoli, p. 151 bottom right/Susanna Fieramosca Naranjo, p. 39 bottom left/Svetlana Larina, p. 96 top right/Tan Kian Khoon, pp. 140 bottom left, 141 right/Thomas Pullicino, p. 125 centre left/Tina Lorian, pp. 5 bottom left, 45 bottom/Tom McNemar, p. 18 (sword)/Toon Possemiers, pp. 41 (Parthenon), 91 centre/Tyler Stalman, p. 25/Ugur Evirgen, p. 78 bottom left/Valerie Loiseleux, p. 66 (barcode)/Vasko Miokovic, pp. 94 top right, 101 left/Vassiliy Mikhailin, p. 147 (coffee)/Victor Prikhodko, p. 157 (girl with hat)/Viktor Prymachuk, p. 48 centre/Vladislav Lebedinski, p. 58 (guitar)/Vladimir Melnik, p. 157 (girl in beret)/Wei-heng, p. 55 right/Xavi Arnau, p. 137 top inset/Yassen Tcholakov, p. 48 top/Yixi guan, p. 90 left/Zoran Djekic, p. 84 (necklace); Jupiterimages Corporation, pp. 15 top, 15 centre (girl), 24 centre right, 25 (green eyes), 25 (black eyes), 27 bottom left, 27 bottom right, 28 (soccer ball), 39 (capelletti), 69 bottom left, 84 (vases), 117 top right, 155, 157 (man), 157 (Saint Peter's Square), 161 bottom right; Masterfile, p. 76 bottom left/George Shelley, p. 54 centre/R. Ian Lloyd, p. 56 top; Photolibary/Jean Pierre Lescourret, p. 8 top left/Science Photo Library, p. 128 centre left/The Print Collector, p. 58 bottom left/Walter Rawlings, p. 157 (Pompeii victim); The Bridgeman Art Library /The Last Supper, 1495-97 (fresco) (pre-restoration) by Vinci, Leonardo da (1452-1519) ©Santa Maria delle Grazie, Milan, Italy/The Bridgeman Art Library.